# Tensor Product Methods and Entanglement Optimization for Ab Initio Quantum Chemistry 

Szilárd Szalay, ${ }^{[a]}$ Max Pfeffer!! ${ }_{\text {! }}^{[b]}$ Valentin Murg, ${ }^{[c]}$ Gergely Barcza, ${ }^{[a]}$ Frank Verstraete, ${ }^{[c]}$ Reinhold Schneider, ${ }^{[b]}$ and Örs Legeza* ${ }^{[a]}$


#### Abstract

The treatment of high-dimensional problems such as the Schrödinger equation can be approached by concepts of tensor product approximation. We present general techniques that can be used for the treatment of high-dimensional optimization tasks and time-dependent equations, and connect them to concepts already used in many-body quantum physics. Based on achievements from the past decade, entanglement-based meth-ods-developed from different perspectives for different purposes in distinct communities already matured to provide a variety of tools-can be combined to attack highly challenging problems in quantum chemistry. The aim of the present paper is to give a pedagogical introduction to the theoretical back-


ground of this novel field and demonstrate the underlying benefits through numerical applications on a text book example. Among the various optimization tasks, we will discuss only those which are connected to a controlled manipulation of the entanglement which is in fact the key ingredient of the methods considered in the paper. The selected topics will be covered according to a series of lectures given on the topic "New wavefunction methods and entanglement optimizations in quantum chemistry" at the Workshop on Theoretical Chemistry, February 18-21, 2014, Mariapfarr, Austria. © 2015 Wiley Periodicals, Inc.

DOI: 10.1002/qua. 24898

## 1 Introduction

For the approximation of the wave function of the electronic structure of an atomic or molecular system, any method chosen will have to compromise between the demanded accuracy on the one hand and the high computational complexity of the task on the other. While density functional theory (DFT) ${ }^{[1]}$ and coupled cluster (CC) or quantum Monte Carlo methods ${ }^{[2-4]}$ are in this sense standard methods for the quantitative study of large weakly correlated systems, there has been no method-of-choice solution for finding a sufficiently accurate, data-sparse representation of the exact many-body wave function if many electrons are strongly correlated, as, for instance, in open-shell systems as transition metal complexes. ${ }^{[5-17]}$

Due to the many-electron interactions present, strongly correlated problems cannot be sufficiently described by small perturbations of a single Slater determinant. For the treatment of other many-particle systems, e.g., spin systems, alternative representations have been proposed, resulting in the development of so-called matrix product states (MPS). ${ }^{[18-21]}$ The MPS method represents the wavefunction of a system of $d$ components or "sites" (corresponding, e.g., to molecular orbitals) by forming products of $d$ matrices, each belonging to one component of the system. The computational complexity of the task is now governed by the size of these matrices, related to the eigenvalue spectrum of the corresponding subsystem density matrices ${ }^{[22]}$ characterizing in a formal way the so-called entanglement among the different components. ${ }^{[23-30]}$ MPS consists in a linear arrangement of the components, while more recently the approach has been generalized to so-called Tensor Network States (TNS), ${ }^{[31-44]}$ allowing a more flexible connection of the components of the respective system. Identical, but independent approaches were devised in numerical mathe-
matics under the term of tensor product approximation, where low-rank factorization of matrices is generalized to higherorder tensors. ${ }^{[45-47]}$ In quantum chemistry, the MPS $^{[7,9,11,14-17,24,25,37,38,48-97]}$ and $\operatorname{TNS}^{[7,98-100]}$ representation can be used to approximate the full-Cl wave function. ${ }^{[38,42,43,101-109]}$ By this new concept of data-sparse representation, an accurate representation of the electronic structure will then be possible in polynomial time if the exact wave function can be approximated to a sufficient extent by moderately entangled TNS representations. The underlying molecular orbital (MO) basis can be optimized by well known techniques from multiconfigurational methods ${ }^{[3]}$ as, e.g., multiconfiguration self-consistent field (MCSCF) method, which constitutes a tensor approximation method as well at the level of first quantization.

[^0]Szilárd Szalay, obtained his PhD degree in theoretical physics in the Budapest University of Technology and Economics, is a postdoctoral research fellow at the Wigner Research Centre for Physics in the group "Strongly Correlated Systems," led by Örs Legeza. His primary research interests are mathematical physics, quantum entanglement, quantum information theory, and the foundations of quantum mechanics.


Max Pfeffer is a Ph.D. student in mathematics at the Technical University in Berlin. There, he also received his Master's degree in 2014. Together with his supervisor Reinhold Schneider, he is a member of the research project "ERA Chemistry: Generalized tensor methods in quantum Chemistry." He specializes in high dimensional problems, tensor product approximation, and numerical optimization. In this context, he also applies concepts from differential geometry.



#### Abstract

Valentin Murg obtained his PhD in theoretical physics in the group of Ignacio Cirac at the Max Planck Institute for Quantum Optics in 2008. Since the beginning of 2009, he is a research associate at the University of Vienna in the group "Quantum Optics, Quantum Nanophysics, and Quantum Information". His research interests are numerical physics, strongly correlated quantum systems, and quantum information.




Entanglement-based methods-developed from different perspectives for different purposes in distinct communities, already matured to provide a variety of tools-can be combined to attack highly challenging problems in quantum chemistry. ${ }^{[110-114]}$ A very promising direction is, especially, to develop and implement an efficient quantum chemistry algorithm based on tree tensor network states (QC-TTNS), in particular enabling the treatment of problems in quantum chemistry that are intractable by standard techniques as DFT or CC. ${ }^{[42,98-100]}$

The aim of the present paper is to give a pedagogical introduction to the theoretical background of this novel field and demonstrate the underlying benefits through numerical applications on a text book example. We give a technical introduction to lowrank tensor factorization and do not intend to present a detailed review of the field. Only some selected topics will be covered according to lectures given on the topic "New wave function methods and entanglement optimizations in quantum chemistry" at the Workshop on Theoretical Chemistry, February 18-21, 2014, Mariapfarr, Austria. ${ }^{[115]}$ In accordance with this, the organization of the present paper is as follows. In sections 2 and 3, a very detailed description of the theory follows so that those interested readers who just entered in the field could follow recent developments. A brief summary in order to highlight the most important concepts used in numerics is presented in section 4 together with numerical applications by outlining ideas and existing algorithmic structures that have been used to arrive at an efficient implementation. At this stage among the various optimization tasks only those will be analyzed which are connected directly to the manipulation of entanglement, which is in fact the key ingre-
dient of the methods presented in the paper. To unify notations, in what follows, we mainly use terms and notations as common in physics and chemistry.

### 1.1 Tensor product methods in quantum chemistry

Multiparticle Schrödinger-type equations constitute an important example of problems posed on high-dimensional tensor spaces. Numerical approximation of solutions of these problems suffers from the curse of dimensionality, i.e., the computational complexity scales exponentially with the dimension of the space. Circumventing this problem is a challenging topic in modern numerical analysis with a variety of applications, covering aside from the electronic and nuclear Schrödinger equation e.g., the Fokker-Planck equation and the chemical master equation. ${ }^{[116]}$ Considerable progress in the treatment of such problems has been made by concepts of tensor product approximation. ${ }^{[45,46,117]}$

In the year 1992, S. R. White introduced a very powerful numerical method, the density-matrix renormalization group (DMRG). ${ }^{[18-120]}$ It allows us to determine the physical properties of low-dimensional correlated systems such as quantum spin chains or chains of interacting itinerant electrons to unprecedented accuracy. ${ }^{[20,121-125]}$

Further success of the DMRG method in quantum physics motivated its application to quantum chemical problems (QCDMRG). ${ }^{[24,48,49,82,126]}$ In the treatment of problems where large active spaces are mandatory to obtain reliable and accurate results, it has proven capable of going well beyond the limits of present day quantum chemistry methods and even reach the full-Cl limit. ${ }^{[38,42,43,101-108,127]}$

In the past decade, the method has gone through major algorithmic developments by various groups. ${ }^{[20,74,101,102,107,109]}$ For example, the two-body reduced density matrices calculated with the DMRG method ${ }^{[24,49,66]}$ can be used in the standard orbital optimization procedure. ${ }^{[3]}$ Resulting methods are the DMRComplete Active Space Self-Consistent Field (DMR-CASSCF) or DMR-Self-Consistent Field (DMR-SCF). ${ }^{[66-68,70]}$ Another direction is the post-DMRG treatment of dynamic correlation. DMRG as it can be considered as a CAS-configuration interaction (CAS-CI) technique can recover static correlation, and, depending on the size of the active space, one can afford also some portion of the dynamic correlation. Quite recently, various advanced methods accounting for dynamic correlation on top of the DMRG framework have been developed. ${ }^{[72,73,78,81,86,87,128]}$ The first implementation of the relativistic quantum chemical two- and fourcomponent density matrix renormalization group algorithm (2cand 4 c -DMRG) has also been presented. ${ }^{\text {[89] }}$

The DMRG method can be used to calculate ground as well as excited states. This can be achieved either by targeting several of them in a state average fashion ${ }^{[24,51,58,63,68,87,90,93,100]}$ or alternatively based on the MPS tangent vectors. ${ }^{[15,129-132]}$. Since the DMRG method is very flexible, it can be used even in such situations when the wave function character changes dramatically. ${ }^{[51,58,83,90,100]}$ Additionally, the ansatz is size consistent by construction and symmetries as particle number, spin projection, ${ }^{[48]}$ spin reflection symmetries, ${ }^{[133]}$ Abelian point group symmetries ${ }^{[25,51,54]}$ and even non-Abelian symmetries can be factored out explicitly. ${ }^{[14,65,80,90,134-147]}$ Quite recently, MPS and further tensor product approximations have been applied in post Hartree-Fock (post-HF) methods to the decomposition of the two electron integrals, the AO-MO (Atomic Orbital-Molecular Orbital) transformation, and the Møller-Plesset perturbation theory (MP2) energy expression. ${ }^{[148]}$

In the MPS-like methods, the computational complexity of the task is governed by the size of the matrices used to approximate the wavefunction, which can, however, be controlled based on various truncation criteria to achieve a priory set error margin. ${ }^{[24,149]}$ In a system with identical sites, this feature is directly connected to the scaling of entanglement when subsystems include larger and larger portion of the total system, also called as area law. ${ }^{[26-28,30]}$ The situation is more complicated in quantum chemical applications since the ranks of the matrices also depend strongly on the ordering of the matrices, ${ }^{[11,13,24,25,51]}$ thus different orderings lead to better or worse results if the ranks are kept fixed. ${ }^{[9,49,52,56,61,72,82,85,90]}$ Another main aspect that effects the performance of the method is the optimization of the basis ${ }^{[67,68,70,85,98,150]}$ and initialization of the network. ${ }^{[11,25,49,59,90,126]}$ Even though the significant efforts dedicated to the various optimization tasks, it remains an open question to determine the minimum of computational effort to obtain results with a given accuracy threshold.

Shortly after DMRG was introduced, it was found that DMRG may also be phrased in terms of MPS, ${ }^{[18]}$ first formulated for special spin systems as the Affleck-Kennedy-Lieb-Tasaki model. ${ }^{[151]}$ More recently, the Higher-Order Singular Value Decomposition (HOSVD) ${ }^{[19,34,152]}$ have made MPS the basis of variational frameworks and revealed a profound connection to
quantum information theory. ${ }^{[21,23,25]}$ In this context, it became apparent that MPS is only one of a more general set of formats: while MPS corresponds to an arrangement of orbitals in a linear topology, quantum states may more generally be arranged as more complex topologies, leading to TNS. ${ }^{[37,98-100]}$ For applications to smaller systems, prototypical tensornetwork state approaches to quantum chemistry have already been developed, including the so-called Complete Graph Tensor Network State approach, ${ }^{[37]}$ and the Tree Tensor Network State (TTNS) approach. ${ }^{[98-100]}$ The QC-TTNS combines a number of favorable features that suggest it might represent a novel, flexible approach in quantum chemistry: the more general concept of data-sparsity inherent in the TNS representation allows for the efficient representation of a much bigger class of wave functions than accessible by state-of-the-art methods. The desired accuracy may be adjusted, so that the ansatz in principle permeates the whole full-Cl space.

These developments foster the hope that with their help some of the major questions in quantum chemistry and condensed matter physics may be solved. The concept of MPS and tree structured TNS has been rediscovered independently in numerical mathematics for tensor product approximation. ${ }^{[117,153]}$

### 1.2 Entanglement and quantum information entropy in quantum chemistry

In quantum systems, correlations having no counterpart in classical physics arise. Pure states showing these strange kinds of correlations are called entangled ones, ${ }^{[26-30,154-156]}$ and the existence of these states has so deep and important consequences ${ }^{[157-159]}$ that Schrödinger has identified entanglement to be the characteristic trait of quantum mechanics. ${ }^{[160,161]}$ The QC-DMRG and QCTTNS algorithms approximate a composite system with strong interactions between many pairs of orbitals, and it turned out that the results of quantum information theory ${ }^{[162,163]}$ can be used to understand the criteria of their convergence. ${ }^{[19-21,23,25]}$

Recently, quantum information theory has also appeared in quantum chemistry giving a fresh impetus to the development of methods in electronic structure theory. ${ }^{[11-13,25,55,61,83,84,89,91,95,164-171]}$ The amount of contribution of an orbital to the total correlation can be characterized, for example, by the single-orbital entropy, ${ }^{[25]}$ and the the sum of all single-orbital entropies gives the amount of total correlation encoded in the wave function. ${ }^{[55,150]}$ This quantity can be used to monitor changes in entanglement as system parameters are adjusted, for example, changing bond length or other geometrical properties. ${ }^{[95,97,100]}$ A useful quantity to numerically characterize the correlations (classical and quantum together) between pairs of orbitals is the mutual information ${ }^{[11,61,172]}$ and it together with the orbital entropy provides chemical information about the system, especially about bond formation and nature of static and dynamic correlation ${ }^{[11,13,83,97]}$.

The two-orbital mutual information also yields a weighted graph of the overall two-orbital correlation of both classical and quantum origin reflecting the entanglement topology of the molecules. Therefore, this quantity can also be used to carry out optimization tasks based on the entanglement between the different components-itself determining the complexity of the
computation-since it depends strongly on the chosen network topology and is in principle unknown for a given system. To promote the efficiency of tensor product methods, various entanglement-based approaches are used to determine, for example, the appropriate ordering, network topology, optimal basis, and efficient network initialization. These important and nontrivial tasks will be considered in section 4.

### 1.3 Tensor decomposition methods in mathematics

Approximation of quantities in high-dimensional spaces is a hard problem with a variety of applications, and the development of generic methods that circumvent the enormous complexity of this task have recently, independent of the developments in the study of quantum systems, gained significant interest in numerical mathematics. ${ }^{[45]} \mathrm{A}$ recent analysis shows that, beyond the matrix case (corresponding to tensors of order 2), almost all tensor problems, even that of finding the best rank-1 approximation of a given tensor, are in general NP hard. ${ }^{[173]}$ Although this shows that tensor product approximation in principle is an extremely difficult task, a variety of generic concepts for the approximation of solutions of certain problem classes have recently been proposed, ${ }^{[46,47]}$ some of which ${ }^{[45,116,174-178]}$ bear a surprising similarity to methods used to treat problems in quantum physics. ${ }^{[179,180]}$
The classical Tucker format attains sparsity via a subspace approximation. Multiconfigurational methods like MCSCF or CASSCF are in fact a Tucker approximation in the framework of antisymmetry. Its unfavorable scaling has recently been circumvented by a multilevel or hierarchical subspace approximation framework named Hierarchical Tucker format, ${ }^{[45,117]}$ interestingly corresponding to the TTNS. A similar format called Tensor Trains (TT), developed independently, ${ }^{[181-183]}$ is a formal version of the MPS with open boundary conditions. Investigation of the theoretical properties of TNS and MPS in a generic context have shown that they inherit desirable properties of matrix factorization. For example, closedness of the set of tensors of fixed block size ${ }^{[45]}$ implies the existence of minimizers in these sets for convex optimization problems. Also, these sets possess a manifold structure that helps to remove redundancy in the parametrization by the introduction of so-called gauge conditions. ${ }^{[184]}$ They can be used to set up variational frameworks for the treatment of optimization problems ${ }^{[42]}$ and of time-dependent problems, ${ }^{[176,177,180,185]}$ bearing again a close connection to approaches in the quantum physics community. ${ }^{[179]}$ In this general context, the robustness and quasi-best approximation of the HOSVD, studied in the mathematics community, ${ }^{[45,46,186]}$ and of the (one site) $\operatorname{DMRG}^{[187]}$ as simple and very efficient numerical methods for the treatment of optimization problems are now well-understood. ${ }^{[45,47]}$ These fundamental properties establish MPS and TTNS as advantageous concepts in tensor product approximation. It is important to note that all these properties are no longer valid in general if the tensor networks contains closed loops, as in case of the projected entangled pair states ${ }^{[31]}$ and the multiscale entanglement renormalization ansatz (MERA). ${ }^{[188]}$ It is still widely unexplored under which conditions the favorable properties of tree structured TNS can be extended to general TNS. In mathematics the phrases, hierarchical tensor representation or Hierarchical Tucker format as
well as TTs instead of MPS are used since there the focus is not only on quantum mechanical systems, but rather on universal tools to handle high-dimensional approximations. Many of the recent developments in mathematics parallel others in quantum computations on a more formal, generic level, often faced with similar experiences and similar problems.

## 2 Quantum Chemistry

### 2.1 The electronic Schrödinger equation

A quantum mechanical system of $N$ nonrelativistic electrons is completely described by a state-function $\Psi$ depending on 3 N spatial variables $\mathbf{r}_{a} \in \mathbb{R}^{3}, a=1, \ldots, N$, together with $N$ discrete spin variables $s_{a} \in\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}, a=1, \ldots, N$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Psi: \mathbb{R}^{3 N} \otimes\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}^{N} \cong\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \otimes\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}  \tag{1}\\
& \left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right) \quad \mapsto \quad \Psi\left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

The function $\Psi$ belongs to the Hilbert space $L_{2}\left(\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N}\right)$ having the standard inner product

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Psi, \Phi\rangle=\sum_{s_{i}= \pm \frac{1}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3 N}} \overline{\Psi\left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right)} \Phi\left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right) \mathrm{d} \mathbf{r}_{1} \ldots \mathrm{~d} \mathbf{r}_{N} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the norm $\|\Psi\|=\sqrt{\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle}$. The Pauli antisymmetry principle states that the wave function of fermions, in particular electrons, must be antisymmetric with respect to the permutation of variables, i.e., for $a \neq b$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi\left(\ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{a}, s_{a} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{b}, s_{b} ; \ldots\right)=-\Psi\left(\ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{b}, s_{b} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{a}, s_{a} ; \ldots\right) \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Such wave-functions are the elements of the antisymmetric tensor subspace $\wedge_{i=1}^{N} L_{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)$. The Pauli exclusion principle immediately follows: $\Psi$ must vanish for the points of $\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N}$ which have the coordinates $\mathbf{r}_{a}=\mathbf{r}_{b}$ and $s_{a}=s_{b}$ for some $a \neq b$ fermions. ${ }^{[1,189]}$

In quantum mechanics, we are usually interested in wavefunctions having definite energies. This is expressed by the stationary Schrödinger equation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H \Psi=E \Psi \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., the wave function is an eigenfunction of a differential operator, namely the Hamilton operator $H$, and the eigenvalue $E \in \mathbb{R}$ is the energy of the corresponding state $\Psi$. One of the most important quantities is the ground state energy $E_{0}$, which is the lowest eigenvalue. The well-known Born-Oppenheimerapproximation considers a nonrelativistic quantum mechanical system of $N$ electrons in an exterior field generated by the $K$ nuclei. In this case, $H$ is as follows

$$
\begin{gather*}
H=H_{\text {kin }}+H_{\text {pot }}, \quad H_{\text {pot }}=H_{\text {ext }}+H_{\text {int }},  \tag{5a}\\
H_{\text {kin }}=\sum_{a=1}^{N}-\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{a}, \quad H_{\text {ext }}=-\sum_{a=1}^{N} \sum_{c=1}^{K} \frac{Z_{c}}{\left|\mathbf{R}_{c}-\mathbf{r}_{a}\right|}, \quad H_{\text {int }}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\substack{a b=a \\
b=a}}^{N} \frac{1}{\left|\mathbf{r}_{b}-\mathbf{r}_{a}\right|} . \tag{5b}
\end{gather*}
$$

Since the Hamilton operator is a linear second-order differential operator, the analysis for the electronic Schrödinger equation has been already established to a certain extent. We would like to briefly summarize some basic results and refer to
the literature. ${ }^{[1,189]}$ The Sobolev spaces $H^{m}:=H^{m}\left(\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N}\right)$, $m \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ are defined as the spaces of functions for which all derivatives up to order $m$ are in $H^{0}:=L_{2}\left(\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N}\right)$. Consequently, the operator $H$ maps the Sobolev space $H^{1}$ continuously into its dual space $H^{-1}$, i.e., $H: H^{1} \rightarrow H^{-1}$ boundedly. ${ }^{[1,189,190]}$ The potential operator $H_{\text {pot }}$ maps the Sobolev spaces $H^{1}$ continuously into $H^{0}$, i.e., $H_{\text {pot }}: H^{1} \rightarrow H^{0}=L_{2}$ boundedly. ${ }^{[189,190]}$ The electronic Schrödinger operator admits a rather complicated spectrum. We are interested mainly in the ground state energy $E_{0}$. If $\sum_{c=1}^{K} Z_{c} \geq N$, in particular for electrical neutral systems, it is known ${ }^{[189,191]}$ that $E_{0}$ is an eigenvalue of finite multiplicity of the operator $H: H^{2} \rightarrow H^{0}$ below the essential spectrum $\sigma_{\text {ess }}(H)$ of $H$, i.e., $-\infty<E_{0}<\inf \sigma_{\text {ess }}(H)$. Summing up, the energy space for the electronic Schrödinger equation is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{V}_{N}=H^{1}\left(\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^{N}\right) \cap{ }_{i=1}^{N} L_{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right) \tag{6}
\end{equation*}
$$

This situation will be considered in the sequel.
For the sake of simplicity, we will also always assume that $E_{0}$ is a simple eigenvalue, i.e., of multiplicity one. In the case, we deal with here, i.e., the stationary electronic Schrödinger equation in nonrelativistic and Born-Oppenheimer setting, we can assume without the loss of generality that the wave function is real valued. (This does not hold for linear response theory or time-dependent problems, as well as for the relativistic regime, where complex phases play an important role.) According to the well known mini-max principle, ${ }^{[189]}$ the ground state energy and the corresponding wave function satisfies the Rayleigh-Ritz variational principle, ${ }^{[189,190]}$ i.e., the lowest eigenvalue is the minimum of the Rayleigh quotient $\frac{\langle\Psi, H \Psi\rangle}{\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle}$, or equivalently,

$$
\begin{gather*}
E_{0}=\min \left\{\langle\Psi, H \Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle=1, \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}\right\},  \tag{7a}\\
\Psi_{0}=\operatorname{argmin}\left\{\langle\Psi, H \Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle=1, \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}\right\} . \tag{7b}
\end{gather*}
$$

Since the Hamilton operator maps $H: \mathcal{V}_{N} \rightarrow\left(\mathcal{V}_{N}\right)^{*}$ boundedly, we will put the eigenvalue problem into the following weak formulation, ${ }^{[190]}$ to find the normalized $\Psi_{0} \in \mathcal{V}_{N}$, satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\Phi,\left(H-E_{0}\right) \Psi_{0}\right\rangle=0, \quad\left\langle\Psi_{0}, \Psi_{0}\right\rangle=1, \quad \forall \Phi \in \mathcal{V}_{N} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will consider the above framework ${ }^{[1,191]}$ throughout the present paper.

### 2.2 Full Cl approach and the Ritz-Galerkin approximation

A convenient way to approximate the wave function is to use an antisymmetric tensor product of basis functions depending only on single particle variables $\left(\mathbf{r}_{a}, s_{a}\right)$, which can be realized by determinants. To this end, let us consider a finite subset of an orthonormal set of basis functions $\varphi_{i}:(\mathbf{r}, s) \mapsto \varphi_{i}(\mathbf{r}, s)$ in $H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)$, that is,

$$
\begin{gathered}
B^{d}:=\left\{\varphi_{i}: i=1, \ldots, d\right\} \subseteq B:=\left\{\varphi_{i}: i \in \mathbb{N}\right\} \subseteq H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right), \\
\mathcal{V}^{d}:=\operatorname{Span} B^{d} \subseteq \mathcal{V}:=\operatorname{Span} B=H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\varphi_{i}, \varphi_{j}\right\rangle:=\sum_{s= \pm \frac{1}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3}} \overline{\varphi_{i}(\mathbf{r}, s)} \varphi_{j}(\mathbf{r}, s) \mathrm{d} \mathbf{r}=\delta_{i, j} . \tag{9}
\end{equation*}
$$

(For simplicity of notation, we will use the same brackets $\langle\cdot, \cdot\rangle$ for designating inner products in Hilbert spaces, independent of the underlying Hilbert space.) In quantum chemistry, these functions are called spin orbitals, because they depend on the spin variable $s= \pm \frac{1}{2}$ and the spatial variable $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{R}^{3}$. In the sequel, we will first confine ourselves to spin orbital formulations. How we go from spin orbitals to spatial orbitals will be explained later.

We build Slater determinants of an $N$-electron system, by selecting $N$ different indices, for example $i_{a}$ for $a=1, \ldots, N$, out of the set $\{1, \ldots, d\}$. By this we have chosen $N$ orthonormal spin orbitals $\varphi_{i_{a}}, a=1, \ldots, N$, to define the Slater determinant ${ }^{[1,2]}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}\left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \operatorname{det}\left(\varphi_{i_{a}}\left(\mathbf{r}_{b}, s_{b}\right)\right)_{a, b=1}^{N} \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_{\sigma \in S_{N}} P(\sigma)\left(\varphi_{i_{\sigma(1)}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \varphi_{i_{\sigma(N)}}\right)\left(\mathbf{r}_{1}, s_{1} ; \ldots ; \mathbf{r}_{N}, s_{N}\right), \tag{10}
\end{align*}
$$

where the summation goes for all $\sigma$ permutations of $N$ elements, and $P(\sigma)$ is the parity of the permutation. To fix the sign of the determinant, we suppose e.g. that $i_{a}<i_{a+1}$ for $a=1, \ldots, N-1$; i.e., the indices are ordered increasingly. Therefore, the Slater determinants are uniquely defined by referring to the orbital functions $\varphi_{i_{a}}$, respectively, indices $i_{a} \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$, which are contained in the determinant.

It is easy to check that the Slater determinants constructed in this way by the orthonormalized spin-orbitals $\varphi_{i} \in \mathcal{V}^{d}$ are also orthonormalized. We define the Full Cl (FCI) space for an $N$-electron system ${ }^{[2,3]}$ as the finite dimensional space $\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ spanned by the Slater-determinants

$$
\begin{aligned}
B_{N}^{d} & :=\left\{\Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}: 1 \leq i_{a}<i_{a+1} \leq d\right\} \\
\subseteq B_{N} & :=\left\{\Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}: 1 \leq i_{a}<i_{a+1}\right\} \subseteq \mathcal{V}_{N}, \\
\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} & :=\operatorname{Span} B_{N}^{d} \subseteq \mathcal{V}_{N}:=\operatorname{Span} B_{N} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The dimension of $\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}=\binom{d}{N}=\frac{d!}{N!(d-N)!} \sim \mathcal{O}\left(d^{N}\right) \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

To obtain an approximate solution of the electronic Schrödinger equation, one may apply the Ritz-Galerkin method using the finite dimensional subspace $\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} \subset \mathcal{V}_{N}$. That is, consider the solution of the finite dimensional eigenvalue problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi_{N}^{d} H \Psi=E \Psi, \quad \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Pi_{N}^{d}: \mathcal{V}_{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ is $L_{2}$-orthogonal projection, or, equivalently,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\Phi,(H-E) \Psi\rangle=0, \quad \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}, \quad \text { for all } \Phi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} . \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

So the approximate ground state energy is

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0, d}:=\min \left\{\langle\Psi, H \Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle=1, \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}\right\}, \tag{14a}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the full Cl ground state wavefunction $\Psi_{0, d} \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ is the solution of the Galerkin scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{0, d}:=\operatorname{argmin}\left\{\langle\Psi, H \Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi, \Psi\rangle=1, \Psi \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}\right\} . \tag{14b}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the above definitions, it becomes obvious that the approximate ground state energy $E_{0, d}$ obtained by the RitzGalerkin method provides an upper bound for the exact energy value $E_{0} \leq E_{0, d}$, given in (7a). The convergence theory of the Galerkin scheme for the numerical solution of eigenvalue problems is well established. ${ }^{[1,190]}$ Roughly speaking, the Galerkin method provides an approximate eigenfunction $\Psi_{0, d}$ which approximates the exact eigenfunction quasioptimally. Moreover, the eigenvalue converges quadratically compared to the convergence of the eigenfunction. Since $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{V}_{d}^{N} \sim \mathcal{O}\left(d^{N}\right) \geq \mathcal{O}\left(2^{N}\right)$, the full Cl approach scales exponentially with respect to $N$. Therefore, for molecules this approach is practically not feasible, except for a very small number of electrons.

### 2.3 Fock spaces

We embed the full Cl space $\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ of $N$-electrons into a larger space $\mathcal{F}^{d}$, called (discrete) Fock space, where we do not care about the number of electrons,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}^{d}:=\stackrel{d}{M=0} \mathcal{V}_{M}^{d}=\left\{\Psi=\Psi_{(0)} \oplus \Psi_{(1)} \oplus \ldots \oplus \Psi_{(d)}: \Psi_{(M)} \in \mathcal{V}_{M}^{d}\right\} \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Its dimension is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{F}^{d}=\sum_{M=0}^{d}\binom{d}{M}=2^{d} . \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Fock space is again a Hilbert space with the inner product inherited from $\mathcal{V}_{M}^{d}$

The full Fock space can be obtained by taking the limit for $d \rightarrow \infty$. Since we consider only finite dimensional approximation, we are not intended here to understand in what sense this limit might be defined or not.

We have the Hamiltonian (5a) acting on the full-Cl space of $N$ electrons as $\Pi_{N}^{d} H: \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$. Since now we allow different numbers of electrons, we denote this explicitly as $H_{N}$, then the Hamiltonian acting on the whole Fock space reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{d}:=\stackrel{d}{M=0} \Pi_{M}^{d} H_{M}: \mathcal{F}^{d} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{d} \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is convenient to define the creation operator $a_{i}^{\dagger}: \mathcal{F}^{d} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{d}$, which is given on Slater determinants as $a_{i}^{\dagger} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}:=\Phi_{\left[i, i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}$. This connects the subspaces with different numbers of particles in the Fock space, $a_{i}^{+}: \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_{N+1}^{d}$. The result of this operator acting on a Slater determinant in $B_{N}^{d}$ is a Slater determinant again, and, up to a $\pm$ sign, it is contained in $B_{N}^{d}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i}^{\dagger} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}=\Phi_{\left[i, i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}=(-1)^{k_{i}} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{2}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}, \tag{19a}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the indices in $\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i, \ldots i_{N}\right]$ are ordered increasingly, and $k_{i}=\left|\left\{i_{b} \mid i_{b}<i\right\}\right|$. From the definition, it immediately follows that $a_{i}^{\dagger} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}=0$ if $i \in\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]$, which is the manifestation of the exclusion principle. One can then obtain the adjoint $a_{i}:=\left(a_{i}^{\dagger}\right)^{\dagger}$ of the creation operator, which is called annihilation operator

$$
\begin{align*}
& a_{i} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{b}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}=(-1)^{k_{i}} \Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]},  \tag{19b}\\
& \quad \text { if } i_{b}=i \text { for some } b=1, \ldots, N, \text { otherwise } 0 .
\end{align*}
$$

It is straightforward to check that these operators obey the fermionic anticommutation relations:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{a_{i}^{\dagger}, a_{j}^{\dagger}\right\}=0, \quad\left\{a_{i}, a_{j}\right\}=0, \quad\left\{a_{i}, a_{j}^{\dagger}\right\}=\delta_{i, j}, \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

(with the anticommutator $\{A, B\}=A B+B A$ ), which is the manifestation of the Pauli antisymmetry principle (3). One can check that the operator $n_{i}:=a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{i}$ leaves invariant all the Slater determinants for which $i \in\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]$, while it annihilates all the Slater determinants for which $i \notin\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]$. One can conclude then that the operator $P=\sum_{i=1}^{d} a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{i}$ acts on $\mathcal{V}_{M}^{d}$ as $M$ times the identity, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\sum_{i=1}^{d} a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{i}=\underset{M=0}{\underset{\oplus}{d} M I_{\nu_{N}^{d}}} \tag{21}
\end{equation*}
$$

on the whole Fock space $\mathcal{F}^{d}$, and it is called particle number operator, since

$$
P\left(0 \oplus \ldots \oplus \Psi_{(M)} \oplus \ldots \oplus 0\right)=M 0 \oplus \ldots \oplus \Psi_{(M)} \oplus \ldots \oplus 0
$$

### 2.4 Occupation numbers and second quantization

Instead of the above notations, it is usual to introduce the very convenient binary labeling, or occupation number labeling, for the Slater determinants $\Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}$. Let $\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)$ be a binary string, i.e., $\mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}$, depending on the presence or absence of $\varphi_{i}$ in the Slater determinant $\Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}$ : For all $i=1, \ldots, d$, if $i \in\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]$ then $\mu_{i}=1$ (then we say that spin-orbital $\varphi_{i}$ is occupied in the Slater determinant), else $\mu_{i}$ $=0$ (unoccupied). So $\mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}$ has the meaning of an occupation number, and we use the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}:=\Phi_{\left[i_{1}, \ldots, i_{N}\right]}, \quad \mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}, i=1, \ldots, d . \tag{22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, in an $N$ particle Slater determinant, $\mu_{i}=1$ appears exactly $N$ times. With this, the Fock space becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{F}^{d}=\stackrel{d}{\oplus} \stackrel{V}{M}_{d}^{d}=\left\{\Psi: \Psi=\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)},\right.  \tag{23}\\
& \left.u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \in \mathbb{C}, \mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}, i=1, \ldots, d\right\} .
\end{align*}
$$

The effect of the creation and annihilation operators (19) can also be formulated using the occupation numbers in a more expressive way than before:
$a_{i}^{\dagger} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}=(-1)^{k_{i}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}+1, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}$, if $\mu_{i}=0$, otherwise 0,
$a_{i} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}=(-1)^{k_{i}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}-1, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}, \quad$ if $\mu_{i}=1$, otherwise 0,
where $k_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \mu_{j}$. On the other hand, $a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{i} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}$ $=\mu_{i} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}$, and with the definition (21) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
P \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{d} \mu_{i}\right) \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)} \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

This binary labeling gives us the opportunity of using another, more convenient, representation of the Fock space, which is called second quantization. To this end, we consider the Hilbert space for the representation of the events of the
occupation of the orbitals. This space has a two-dimensional tensor factor $\Lambda_{i} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2}$ for each orbital, containing two orthogonal states representing the unoccupied and occupied states of the orbital. So, let us define the tensor product space

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda^{(d)}:={\underset{i=1}{d}}_{\otimes}^{Q_{i}} \cong \stackrel{d}{i=1} \mathbb{C}^{2}, \tag{26}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the canonical basis $\left\{\left|\phi_{0}\right\rangle \cong \mathbf{e}_{0},\left|\phi_{1}\right\rangle \cong \mathbf{e}_{1}\right\}$ of the vector space $\Lambda_{i} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2}$, where $\left(\mathbf{e}_{0}\right)_{\mu}=\delta_{\mu, 0},\left(\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)_{\mu}=\delta_{\mu, 1}$. (For the elements of only these spaces, we use the so called ket-notation $|\ldots\rangle$, which is very common in physics for denoting elements of Hilbert spaces.) So we write any $|U\rangle \in \mathbb{C}^{2}$ as $|U\rangle$ $=\sum_{\mu=0}^{1} U(\mu)\left|\phi_{\mu}\right\rangle$. The dimension of this space is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(d)}=2^{d} \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

We also have the canonical inner product in $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U \mid V\rangle=\sum_{\mu=0}^{1} \overline{U(\mu)} V(\mu), \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

for which the canonical basis is orthogonal, $\left\langle\phi_{\mu} \mid \phi_{\nu}\right\rangle=\delta_{\mu, v}$, for $\mu, v=0,1$. Using the canonical basis $\left\{\left|\phi_{\mu_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle\right\}$ of $\Lambda_{i}$, the set $\left\{\left|\phi_{\mu_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{\mu_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle: \mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}, i=1, \ldots, d\right\}$ gives the canonical basis in $\Lambda^{(d)}$, and any $|U\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}$ can be represented by

$$
\begin{equation*}
|U\rangle=\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\mu_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{\mu_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle . \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

If there is no ambiguity about the underlying basis, we consider the canonical tensor product basis above, and we can identify $|U\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}$ with $U \in \underset{i=1}{\otimes} \mathbb{C}^{2}$, where $U$ are simply $d$-variate functions (see section 3.1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right) \quad \mapsto \quad U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right) \in \mathbb{C} \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

depending on the discrete variables $\mu_{i}=0,1$, for $i=1, \ldots, d$, called also indices in the sequel. Due to the orthogonality of the canonical basis, the canonical inner product of $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ induces

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle U \mid V\rangle:=\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \overline{U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)} V\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right) \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the norm $\|U\|=\sqrt{\langle U, U\rangle}$ in $\Lambda^{(d)}$.
Now, let us introduce the isomorphism $\imath: \mathcal{F}^{d} \rightarrow \Lambda^{(d)}$, defined by its action on the basis functions, i.e., the Slater determinants $\Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}$ of occupation numbers $\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)$ simply as
$l\left(\Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}\right):=\left|\phi_{\mu_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{\mu_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle, \quad \mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}, \quad i=1, \ldots, d$.
(This is an elementary tensor product, in physics called tensor product state.) It is easy to check that this is indeed an isomorphism, and compatible with the inner products of the two spaces, so we conclude that the discrete Fock space $\mathcal{F}^{d}$ is isomorphic to $\Lambda^{(d)} \cong \underset{i=1}{\otimes} \mathbb{C}^{2}$, and

$$
\begin{align*}
|\Psi\rangle & :=\imath(\Psi)=\imath\left(\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}\right) \\
& =\sum_{\mu} U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\mu_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{\mu_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle \tag{33a}
\end{align*}
$$

leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)=u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} . \tag{33b}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, we have used the convention above that for a function $\Psi \in \mathcal{F}^{d}$, its image by $\imath$ is written as the ket $|\Psi\rangle$. The Full-Cl space for $N$ electrons $\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ is a subspace of the Fock space $\mathcal{F}^{d}$, and its image in $\Lambda^{(d)}$ is denoted as $\Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}:=\imath\left(\mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}\right) \subset \Lambda^{(d)}$. This is the $N$-electron subspace of $\Lambda^{(d)}$, having dimension $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}=\binom{d}{N}$.

Through this isomorphism, we can obtain the creation and annihilation operators (24) acting on $\Lambda^{(d)}$ as follows ${ }^{[189]}$

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger}:=\imath \circ a_{i}^{\dagger} \circ l^{-1}=\mathbf{s} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a}^{\dagger} \otimes \mathbf{I} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{I}: \Lambda^{(d)} \rightarrow \Lambda^{(d)},  \tag{34a}\\
\mathbf{a}_{i}:=\imath \circ a_{i} \circ \iota^{-1}=\mathbf{s} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{I} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{I}: \Lambda^{(d)} \rightarrow \Lambda^{(d)}, \tag{34b}
\end{gather*}
$$

(where $\mathbf{a}^{+}$and $\mathbf{a}$ appear in the $i$-th position) with the operators

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbf{a}:=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{a}^{+}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \\
& \mathbf{s}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{I}:=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 0 \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right), \tag{35}
\end{align*}
$$

acting on $\Lambda_{i}$. The operators $\mathbf{a}_{i}$ and $\mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger}$ again obey the fermionic anticommutation relation (20). Let us highlight that the $2 \times 2$ matrix $\mathbf{s}$ is required to provide the correct phase factor, i.e., sign of the Slater determinant. The particle number operator acting on $\Lambda^{(d)}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{P}:=\imath \circ P \circ l^{-1}=\sum_{i=1}^{d} \mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}_{i}, \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is, since $\mathbf{s}^{2}=I$, the sum of matrices

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{n}_{i}=\mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}_{i}=\mathbf{I} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{I} \otimes \mathbf{a}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{I} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbf{I}: \Lambda^{(d)} \rightarrow \Lambda^{(d)} \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the matrix

$$
\mathbf{n}=\mathbf{a}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}:=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0  \tag{38}\\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

in the $i$-th position, representing the occupation number of the given orbital.

Let us remark that since the isomorphism $l$ is defined through a given Slater determinant basis, the above representation of a wave function is basis dependent, i.e., it depends on the choice of the one-particle basis set $B^{d}$.

### 2.5 Example: HF determinant and change of one-particle basis

The Hartree-Fock determinant in terms of canonical MO functions is given by $\Psi_{\text {HF }}=\Phi_{[1, \ldots, N]}=\Phi_{(1, \ldots, 1,0, \ldots, 0)}$, i.e., $i_{b}=b$ for $b=1, \ldots, N$, the first $N$ spin-orbitals are occupied. In $\Lambda^{(d)}$ this is represented by the tensor for which $U\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)=1$ if and only if $\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)=(1, \ldots, 1,0, \ldots, 0)$, or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{\mathrm{HF}}\right\rangle=\left|\phi_{1}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{1}^{\{N\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{0}^{\{N+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{0}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we move to another basis, respectively, basis set, say

$$
\begin{align*}
B^{d} & =\left\{\varphi_{i}: i=1, \ldots, d\right\} \quad \mapsto \\
\tilde{B^{d}} & =\left\{\tilde{\varphi}_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{d} U_{i, j} \varphi_{j}: i=1, \ldots, d\right\}, \tag{40}
\end{align*}
$$

with the unitary $d \times d$ matrix $\mathbf{U}=\left(U_{i, j}\right)$, the representation of the old Slater determinants $\Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}=\sum_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}} \tilde{v}_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}} \tilde{\Phi}_{\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right)}$ in terms of the new Slater determinants $\tilde{\Phi}_{\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right)}$ is no longer of rank one. It is a short exercise to show a representation of the form $\Psi=\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)}$ is transformed into

$$
\begin{aligned}
|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle & =e^{\sum_{i=N+1}^{d} \sum_{j=1}^{N} t_{i j} \mathbf{a}_{i}^{+} \mathbf{a}_{j}}|\Psi\rangle \\
& =\Pi_{i=N+1}^{d} \Pi_{j=1}^{N}\left(\mathbf{I}^{d}+t_{i, j} \mathbf{a}_{i}^{+} \mathbf{a}_{j}\right)|\Psi\rangle \\
& =\left(\mathbf{I}^{d}+t_{N+1,1} \mathbf{a}_{N+1}^{+} \mathbf{a}_{1}\right) \cdot \ldots \cdot\left(\mathbf{I}^{d}+t_{d, N} \mathbf{a}_{d}^{+} \mathbf{a}_{N}\right)|\Psi\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

up to a normalization constant. This transformation serves as the transformation of the basis sets. Let us remark that in CC theory the above expression is known as the CC single excited states, and the above transformation is used for the definition of the Brückner orbital. ${ }^{[3]}$ Also each factor is at most of rank two, so in the worst case the rank could increased by a factor of two with each matrix multiplication. The single Slater determinant expressed by another basis set is a linear combination of many Slater determinants with respect to the new basis. Indeed it can happen that in the new bases it is represented by the maximally entangled state tensor $|\tilde{\Psi}\rangle$.

### 2.6 Ritz-Galerkin approximation in second quantization

Now we are able to formulate the full-CI Schrödinger equation (12) in the second-quantized form. By the isomorphism $l$, the Hamiltonian (18) acting on $\mathcal{F}^{d}$ is defined on $\Lambda^{(d)}$ as follows

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}=\imath \circ H^{d} \circ \iota^{-1}: \Lambda^{(d)} \rightarrow \Lambda^{(d)} . \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the ansatz $\Psi=\sum_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}} u_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}} \Phi_{\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right)} \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ for the eigenvector, with the help of $l$, we obtain the discrete eigenvalue problem from (13) in the $N$-electron subspace of $\Lambda^{(d)}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\langle\Phi_{\left.\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right),(H-E) \Psi\right\rangle=} \sum_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}}\left\langle\Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)},(H-E) \Phi_{\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right)}\right\rangle u_{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}}\right. \\
& =((\mathbf{H}-E \mathbf{I})|\Psi\rangle)_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}}=0 \quad \forall \mu_{i} \in\{0,1\}, \quad i=1, \ldots, d .
\end{aligned}
$$

If we allow $|\Psi\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}$, not only in its $N$-electron subspace, we do not get only the eigenvalues $E$ for a discretized $N$ electron system, but also the eigenvalues for other numbers of electrons between 1 and $d$. To fix this kind of problem, we take into account the particle number operator (36), then $\Psi$ $=\sum_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} u_{\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}} \Phi_{\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{d}\right)} \in \mathcal{V}_{N}^{d}$ holds if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{P}|\Psi\rangle=N|\Psi\rangle \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., $|\Psi\rangle$ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{P}$ with the eigenvalue $N$.

From the well-known Slater-Condon rules, ${ }^{[2]}$ one concludes the precise representation of the Hamiltonian in the discrete space $\Lambda^{(d)}$, which reads as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{d} T_{i j} \mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}_{j}+\sum_{i, j, k, l=1}^{d} V_{i j k \mid} \mathbf{a}_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}_{j}^{\dagger} \mathbf{a}_{k} \mathbf{a}_{l} . \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here the coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{i j}=\sum_{s= \pm \frac{1}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3}} \overline{\varphi_{i}(\mathbf{r}, s)}\left(-\frac{1}{2} \Delta-\sum_{c=1}^{K} \frac{Z_{c}}{\left|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{R}_{c}\right|}\right) \varphi_{j}(\mathbf{r}, s) \mathrm{d} \mathbf{r} \tag{44a}
\end{equation*}
$$

are the well-known single electron integrals, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{i j k l}=\sum_{s, s^{\prime}= \pm \frac{1}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3}} \overline{\varphi_{i}(\mathbf{r}, s) \varphi_{j}\left(\mathbf{r}^{\prime}, s^{\prime}\right)} \frac{1}{\left|\mathbf{r}^{\prime}-\mathbf{r}\right|} \varphi_{k}(\mathbf{r}, s) \varphi_{l}\left(\mathbf{r}^{\prime}, s^{\prime}\right) \mathrm{d} \mathbf{r d} \mathbf{r}^{\prime} \tag{44b}
\end{equation*}
$$

are the two electron integrals, both are coming from the parts of the original Hamiltonian (5b). With this, the discrete (Full CI) Schrödinger equation for the approximation of the ground state can be cast into the binary variational form of finding $|\Psi\rangle$ $\in \Lambda^{(d)}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0, d}=\min \left\{\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=1, \mathbf{P}|\Psi\rangle=N|\Psi\rangle,|\Psi\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}\right\}, \tag{45a}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\left|\Psi_{0, d}\right\rangle=\operatorname{argmin}\left\{\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle:\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=1, \mathbf{P}|\Psi\rangle=N|\Psi\rangle,|\Psi\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}\right\}$.

Let us remark that this representation depends on the basis orbital functions $B^{d}$. For a change of basis, as is given in (40), the creation and annihilation operators transform as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\mathbf{a}}_{i}^{\dagger}=\sum_{j=1}^{d} U_{i, j} \mathbf{a}_{j}^{\dagger}, \quad \tilde{\mathbf{a}}_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{d} \overline{U_{i, j}} \mathbf{a}_{j} . \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

With respect to the new basis set $\tilde{B^{d}}$, we can build another Slater determinant basis $\left\{\tilde{\Phi}_{\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right)}: v_{i} \in\{0,1\}, i=1, \ldots, d\right\}$ of the discrete Fock space $\mathcal{F}^{d}$. With respect to this new Slater determinant basis, the operators $\tilde{\mathbf{a}}_{i}$ has the canonical form (34b)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\mathbf{a}}_{i}=\mathbf{s} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{I} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{I} \tag{47}
\end{equation*}
$$

The one and two electron integrals transform easily, e.g.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{T}_{i j}=\sum_{k l}\left(U^{+}\right)_{i k} T_{k l} U_{l j} . \tag{48}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.7 Spatial orbitals

For the sake of simplicity of representation, throughout this section we have dealt with spin orbital basis $\varphi_{i}$ for $i=1, \ldots, d$, and the above setting $\Lambda^{(d)}=\underset{i=1}{\otimes} \Lambda_{i} \cong \underset{i=1}{\otimes} \mathbb{C}^{2}$. In the QC-DMRG, it has been experienced that it is favorable to use spin functions explicitly, and deal only with spatial orbitals. More precisely, we take a set $\left\{\kappa_{i} \in H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right): i=1\right.$,
$\ldots, d\}$ of orthonormalized functions, depending on the space-variable $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{R}^{3}$ only, and define the basis of $2 d$ elements

$$
\begin{align*}
& \varphi_{2 i}(\mathbf{r}, s)=\kappa_{i}(\mathbf{r}) \chi_{+}(s), \\
& \chi_{+}(s)=1 \quad \text { if } s=+\frac{1}{2}, \quad \chi_{+}(s)=0 \quad \text { if } s=-\frac{1}{2},  \tag{49a}\\
& \varphi_{2 i+1}(\mathbf{r}, s)=\kappa_{i}(\mathbf{r}) \chi_{-}(s), \\
& \chi_{-}(s)=0 \quad \text { if } s=+\frac{1}{2}, \quad \chi_{-}(s)=1 \quad \text { if } s=-\frac{1}{2}, \tag{49b}
\end{align*}
$$

which are orthonormalized in $H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \times\left\{ \pm \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)$. Now, repeating the previous construction leads to the $2 d$ spaces $W_{2 i-1}$ $\cong \mathbb{C}^{2}$ and $W_{2 i} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2}$. Let us cast the tensor product of two adjacent spaces into one $\Lambda_{i}:=W_{2 i-1} \otimes W_{2 i} \cong \mathbb{C}^{4}$, and with this,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda^{(d)}=\underset{i=1}{\mathbb{\otimes}} \Lambda_{i} \cong \underset{i=1}{\mathbb{\otimes}} \mathbb{C}^{4}, \tag{50}
\end{equation*}
$$

having the dimension $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(d)}=4^{d}$. The $N$-electron subspace $\Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}$ is then of dimension $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}=\binom{2 d}{N}$. In the case when the $N_{\downarrow}$ and $N_{\uparrow}$ numbers of electrons of spins $-1 / 2$ and $+1 / 2$ are conserved, only a subspace of this is needed, which is called then the Full-Cl space that is of dimension $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}=\binom{d}{N_{\downarrow}}\binom{d}{N_{\uparrow}}<\binom{2 d}{N}$.

Using the matrices (35), we define

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbf{c}_{s}:=\mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{l} \quad \text { if } s=+\frac{1}{2}, \quad \mathbf{c}_{s}:=\mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a} \quad \text { if } s=-\frac{1}{2}, \text { (51a) }  \tag{51a}\\
& \mathbf{z}:=\mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{s}, \quad \mathbb{D}=\mathbf{l} \otimes \mathbf{l},  \tag{51b}\\
& \mathbf{c}_{i, s}:=\mathbf{z} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{z} \otimes \mathbf{c}_{s} \otimes \mathbb{\square} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{Q},  \tag{51c}\\
&\left.\mathbf{n}_{s}:=\mathbf{c}_{s}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{s}, \quad \mathbf{n}_{i, s}:=\mathbf{c}_{i, s}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{i, s}=\mathbb{\square} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{\square} \otimes \mathbf{c}_{s}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{s} \otimes \mathbb{\square} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{D}\right) \tag{51d}
\end{align*}
$$

With these, the Hamilton operator reads as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{d} \sum_{s_{i}, s_{j}= \pm \frac{1}{2}} T_{i j} \mathbf{c}_{i, s_{i}}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{c}_{j, s_{j}}+\sum_{i, j, k, l=1}^{d} \sum_{s_{i}, s_{j}, s_{k}, s_{l}= \pm \frac{1}{2}} V_{i j k \mid} \mathbf{c}_{i, s_{i}}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{j, s_{j}}^{\dagger} \boldsymbol{c}_{k, s_{k}} \boldsymbol{c}_{l, s_{l}} . \tag{52}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us remark that in the nonrelativistic quantum chemistry, the one- and two electron integrals do not depend on the spin variables $s_{j}$. This is the reason for using the spatial orbital formulation. (However, this does not hold when relativistic effects, e.g. spin-orbit coupling are taken into account, as is used in a recent development in DMRG. ${ }^{[89]}$ )

## 3 Tensor product approximation

### 3.1 Tensor product parametrization

We generalize (33a) by considering vector spaces with arbitrary dimension $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{i}=q_{i}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle . \tag{53}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, the tensor

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)} \tag{54}
\end{equation*}
$$

is equivalent to the multi-indexed array

$$
\begin{gather*}
U \in \mathbb{C}_{1}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}},  \tag{55}\\
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right), \alpha_{i} \in\left\{1, \ldots, q_{i}\right\}, \quad i=1, \ldots, d . \tag{56}
\end{gather*}
$$

The norm and inner product of these two tensor spaces are defined analogously to section 2.4.

Computation with tensors suffer from the curse of dimensionality, ${ }^{[46]}$ since the storage of the complete array grows exponentially with the order $d$.

We seek to reduce computational costs by parametrizing the tensors in some data-sparse representation. For this purpose, we adhere to the separation of variables, a classical approach which traces back to Bernoulli and Fourier among others. In principle, we want to represent or approximate tensors as multivariate functions by a sum of products of univariate functions. This concept is well established for tensors of order $d=2$ where it leads to fundamental results known as the singular value decomposition (SVD) or Schmidt decomposition, proper orthogonal decomposition, the Karhunen-Loeve transform and so on. In the discrete case discussed here, i.e. in matrix theory, this is known as low-rank approximation. However, the generalization of the concept of ranks to higherorder tensors is not as straightforward as one may expect. ${ }^{[45]}$ There are many possible and a priori equally justifiable tensor decompositions that all yield different definitions of a tensor rank.

The canonical tensor representation separates the variables

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{R} u_{i}^{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) \cdots u_{i}^{d}\left(\alpha_{d}\right) . \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

The canonical tensor rank of $U$ is the smallest $R$ such that this representation is exact. This is then called the canonical decomposition of the tensor. ${ }^{[45]}$

However, while this is a beautiful and rather simplistic tensor representation, it has several severe drawbacks. First of all, finding the canonical rank and thus also its decomposition is $N P$-hard. ${ }^{[192]}$ Additionally, the set of tensors with rank smaller or equal to $R$ is not closed, i.e. it is possible to find a sequence of rank- $R$-tensors that converges to a tensor with rank greater than $R$, see the border rank problem. ${ }^{[45,193]}$ While the former property obviously poses problems in computation, the latter can be very undesirable as well when it comes to optimization algorithms. Altogether, the canonical format has not only led to deep and difficult mathematical problems, ${ }^{[193,194]}$ but also computational experience has often been disappointing, by observing slow convergence, low accuracy, and the like. It is not clear how to circumvent these problems while still retaining its outstanding complexity scaling. In recent years, the canonical format has therefore been put into question, albeit
not completely disqualified, and we are looking for alternatives with favorable properties.

We parametrize a tensor in a very general form to define a tensor representation via

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)=\sum_{\mathbf{m}}^{\mathbf{r}} \prod_{i}^{K} U_{i}\left(\alpha_{i, 1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i, y} ; m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}\right) \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{m}$ denotes the multi-index

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{m}=\bigcup_{i=1}^{K}\left\{m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}\right\} . \tag{59}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the ordering of the indices is irrelevant in this context, we maintain the slight abuse of notation and interpret multiindices as sets of natural numbers.
This tensor representation is parametrized by $K$ component tensors $U_{1}, \ldots, U_{K}$. The $\alpha_{i}$ are called physical indices and the $m_{j}$ are called virtual. A component $U_{i}$ is called virtual, if it does not have any physical indices, i.e. $y_{i}=0$. Otherwise it is called physical. Summation over a common virtual index $m_{j}$ is called the contraction over $m_{j}$.

We can demand a number of further properties that allow for simpler treatment of the tensor. First of all, it is conventional to only deal with multilinear representations:

Criterion. 3.1. For each $j \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$ there exists exactly one $i \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$ such that $\alpha_{j} \in\left\{\alpha_{i, 1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i, y_{i}}\right\}$.

This means that no two components can depend on the same physical index. The present multilinear parametrization provides simple representation of the derivatives, an indispensable tool for local optimization, ${ }^{[195,196]}$ and alternating directional search methods. ${ }^{[149]}$

It is our central aim to reduce complexity of the tensor and we therefore need to choose the representation carefully. Firstly, the number of components should not be exceedingly high, as this makes the representation more complicated. But more importantly, we try to minimize the dimensions $\mathbf{r}$ of the multi-index $\mathbf{m}$ over all possible representations (58). If these dimensions $r_{i}$ are minimal for the given parametrization, the tuple $\mathbf{r}$ is called the rank, or better multilinear rank of the representation and the representation is called a decomposition. However, as mentioned for the canonical format above, this notion of rank leads to extreme difficulties even for the simplest forms.

### 3.2 Tensor networks

For a proper definition of multilinear ranks, we consider subclasses of tensor representations and introduce a further restriction that each $m_{i} \in \mathbf{m}$ appears exactly twice:

Criterion. 3.2. For each virtual index $m_{i} \in \mathbf{m}$, there exist exactly two component tensors $U_{i_{1}}, U_{i_{2}}$ with $m_{i}$ as an index.

Any parametrization satisfying criterion 3.1 and 3.2 can be expressed as a simple undirected weighted graph with halfedges, and we obtain what is called a tensor network or TNS in


Figure 1. A general tensor network representation of a tensor of order 5.
quantum physics. The component tensors give the vertices of the graph, the contractions are represented by the edges between the vertices and the physical indices yield half edges. Therefore, we get a graph $\operatorname{TNS}(U):=(V, E, H)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
V=\left\{U_{i}: i=1, \ldots, K\right\}, E=\mathbf{m}, H=\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right\} . \tag{60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because of criterion 3.1, each half-edge has exactly one incident vertex, and because of 3.2, each edge has exactly two incident vertices. ${ }^{[195]}$ Thus, this is well-defined. The weight of the half-edge $\alpha_{i}$ is given by its dimension $q_{i}$ and the weight of the edge $m_{j}$ is given by its dimension $r_{j}$. In accordance with the tensor decompositions, we call the vector $\mathbf{r}$ the rank of the tensor network if it is minimal. $q_{1} \cdots q_{d}$ is naturally the dimension of the tensor network, as shown in Figure 1.

Since a contraction over an index with dimension 1 is trivial, we can choose to either omit this index or even to introduce extra indices. In general, we require the tensor network graph to be connected and if it is not we invent an arbitrary index of dimension 1 to make it so. Apart from that, any index of dimension 1 that is not necessary for connectedness will usually be omitted.

Although heavily used in physics, this general concept still suffers from some instabilities. Recently, it has been shown that tensor networks which contain closed loops are not necessarily Zariski closed, ${ }^{[194]}$ i.e., they do not form algebraic varieties without further restrictions. This is closely related to the border rank problem for the canonical format. While we will not go into these details here, we highlight that all these difficulties can be avoided, if we restrict ourselves to tensors fulfilling the following criterion ${ }^{[194]}$ :

Criterion. 3.3. The tensor network $\operatorname{TNS}(\mathrm{U})$ is cycle-free.

Since we have the trivial connectedness mentioned above, any tensor network that fulfills criterion 3.3 is a tree. It is thus called a Tree Tensor Network or, in accordance with nomenclature from Quantum Physics, TTNS. See Figure 2 for an arbitrary example.

While general tensor network representations, like the canonical format, might still be very useful and shall not be disqualified, we presently only consider the special case of noncircular graphs that prevents these fundamental difficulties.


Figure 2. An arbitrary example of a tensor tree.

### 3.3 Subspace optimization and the Tucker format

Tensor trees can be introduced from a different perspective in order to illustrate that they share favorable properties with the matrix case. In our discrete setting, the tensor space and the tensor product space are equivalent

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}} \cong \stackrel{d}{\underset{i}{\infty}} \mathbb{C}^{q_{i}} \cong \stackrel{d}{\otimes=1} \Lambda_{i} \tag{61}
\end{equation*}
$$

via the trivial formula (53). $\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle$ are the standard Euclidean basis vectors of $\Lambda_{i}$ for each $i$.

In this context, we define the subspace optimization as the best approximation of $U^{[45,47]}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{argmin}\left\{\left\|U-U_{\epsilon}\right\|: U_{\epsilon} \in \underset{i=1}{\otimes} \Xi_{i}, \operatorname{dim} \Xi_{i} \leq r_{i}\right\}, \tag{62}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we optimize over the tensor product of all univariate subspaces $\Xi_{i} \subset \Lambda_{i}$ of dimension at most $r_{i}$. If we can recover the tensor $U$ exactly, i.e. $\left\|U-U_{\epsilon}\right\|=0$, we call $U_{\epsilon}$ the subspace representation of $U$. In accordance with the above, a subspace representation is called a decomposition if the dimensions $r_{i}$ are the ranks, i.e. they are the smallest numbers such that the tensor can still be recovered exactly.

This immediately motivates the Tucker decomposition format of a tensor. For each $i=1, \ldots, d$, we aim at finding an optimal basis set $\left\{\left|\xi_{m_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle: m_{i}=1, \ldots, r_{i}\right\}$ of a subspace $\Xi_{i} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{q_{i}}$ where $r_{i} \leq q_{i}$. (53) can thus be restated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{1}} \ldots \sum_{m_{d}=1}^{r_{d}} C\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{d}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\xi_{m_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle . \tag{63}
\end{equation*}
$$

$C \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{1} \times \ldots \times r_{d}}$ is a reduced core tensor, that is hopefully much smaller than the original coefficient tensor, due to the optimal choice of basis.

For exact recovery, obtaining the basis vectors in the discrete setting is relatively straightforward. It can be achieved by applying a SVD in every mode-thus called Higher-Order SVD (HOSVD)—of the tensor: For the $i$-th mode, we compute the SVD of the i-mode matricization

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}}^{\alpha_{i}} \in \mathbb{C}^{\left(q_{1} \cdots q_{i} \cdots q_{d}\right) \times q_{i}} \tag{64}
\end{equation*}
$$

and obtain the basis vectors $\left|\xi_{1}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\xi_{r_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle$, which span the optimal subspace of $\Lambda_{i} \cdot{ }^{[45,116,197]}$

In many applications, we want to approximate the tensor with lower rank $\tilde{\mathbf{r}} \leq \mathbf{r}$. In the matrix case $d=2$, this can be done by truncating the above SVD and omitting the basis vectors that belong to the smallest $r-\tilde{r}$ singular values. The discovery that this already yields the optimal result is mostly accredited to Eckard and Young in mathematics, while most physics articles recognize the fact that it had been proven by Schmidt long before for the more complicated case of integral operators. ${ }^{[198]}$

Unfortunately, this result cannot be generalized to tensors with $d>2$. It has been shown that even finding the best rank one, i.e. $\mathbf{r}=(1,1, \ldots, 1)$, can be $N P$-hard if $d>2$. Nevertheless, truncating the HOSVD in every mode only yields a quasioptimal approximation with respect to the $I_{2}$-norm. ${ }^{[173,197]}$ However, in many cases, this is satisfactory.

The Tucker format is a subspace decomposition as the tensor is expressed in the basis of a subspace of the tensor space. At the same time, it yields a tensor tree, i.e. its representation fulfills criterion 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3. $C \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{1} \times \ldots \times r_{d}}$ is the only virtual component and

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)=\left\langle\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}} \mid \xi_{m_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \tag{65}
\end{equation*}
$$

yields the $d$ physical components, see Figure 3.
The HOSVD gives us a constructive algorithm that computes the Tucker decomposition, i.e., a representation of the form (63) with minimal rank $\mathbf{r}$, in polynomial time. Additionally, the set of tensors with Tucker rank at most $\mathbf{r}$ is known to be Zariski-closed. ${ }^{[194]}$ Therefore, it is closed and we overcome the border rank problem. In terms of storage complexity, however, this format is far from being optimal. It now scales exponentially in $r_{i}$, i.e., for $r:=\max \left\{r_{i}\right\}$ the scaling is in $\mathcal{O}\left(d q r+r^{d}\right)$. Especially for small $q_{i}$, where we do not have $r_{i} \ll q_{i}$, we cannot hope for much reduction of complexity. In particular, for $q_{i}=2$ we do not gain any nontrivial progress.

### 3.4 Matricization and tensor multiplication

To a certain extent, these representation allow to apply matrix analysis techniques to tensors. We therefore generalize the aforementioned matricization. Let $t \subseteq\{1, \ldots, d\}$ be a collection of physical dimensions and $t^{c}:=\{1, \ldots, d\} \backslash t$ its complement. Then


Figure 3. A Tucker tensor of order 5.

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{t}}^{\alpha_{t} c} \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{t}} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{q_{t} c} \tag{66}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the matricization with $q_{t}=\left\{q_{i} \in\left\{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}\right\}: i \in t\right\}$ as row dimensions and $q_{t}=\left\{q_{i} \in\left\{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}\right\} \backslash q_{t}\right\}$ as column dimensions. A special case is the $i$-th matricization

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}}^{\alpha_{i+1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \cdots q_{i}} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{q_{i+1} \cdots q_{d}} \tag{67}
\end{equation*}
$$

utilized further down that is casting the first $i$-variables into the row index, and the remaining $d-i$ in the column index.

This Einstein-like notation allows us to introduce a tensor multiplication. Let $U \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{1,1} \times \ldots \times q_{1, d_{1}}}$ and $V \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{2,1} \times \ldots \times q_{2, d_{2}}}$. Then if for to matricizations $t_{1} \in\left\{1, \ldots, d_{1}\right\}, t_{2} \in\left\{1, \ldots, d_{2}\right\}$ it holds $q_{1, t_{1}^{c}}=q_{2, t_{2}}=: q_{t_{1}, t_{2}}$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{1, t}, t_{1}}^{\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}}[V]_{\alpha_{t_{1}}, t_{2}}^{\alpha_{2, t}}=\sum_{\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}} U\left(\alpha_{1, t_{1}}, \alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}\right) V\left(\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}, \alpha_{2, t_{2}^{c}}\right) \tag{68}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is exactly the matrix multiplication of the matricizations and it is the contraction over the indices $\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}$. In the case where no dual space is involved, i.e., no contraction is performed, we obtain the tensor product

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{1,1}, \ldots, \alpha_{1, d_{1}}}[V]_{\alpha_{2,1}, \ldots, \alpha_{2, d_{2}}}=U \otimes V \tag{69}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in the complex case described here, the matricization should only be seen as the reordering and grouping of indices, instead of introducing a concept of duality as done in some literature. ${ }^{[193]}$ This is due to the fact that it is impossible to take the complex conjugate only in a few indices of $U$, which would be required for this concept. ${ }^{[156]}$ Thus, the reader should note that switching the ordering of the indices gives only the transpose and not the hermitian of the original matricization:

$$
\begin{equation*}
[U]_{\alpha_{t}}^{\alpha_{\alpha_{t}}}=\left([U]_{\alpha_{t} c}^{\alpha_{t}}\right)^{T}=\overline{\left([U]_{\alpha_{t} c}^{\alpha_{t}}\right)^{\top}} \tag{70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, we want to simplify the notation for the unambiguous case where we multiply over all common indices. This will be denoted with a circle, since it can be seen as a composition of two linear operators:

$$
\begin{equation*}
U \circ V:=[U]_{\alpha_{1, t_{1}}}^{\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}}[V]_{\alpha_{t_{1}, t_{2}}}^{\alpha_{2, t}}, q_{1, i} \neq q_{2, j} \forall i \in t_{1}, j \in t_{2}^{c} \tag{71}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.5 Matrix product states or the TT format

Another example of a tensor network is the $T T$ decomposition of a tensor. The tensor $U$ is given element-wise as

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{1}} \ldots \sum_{m_{d-1}=1}^{r_{d-1}} A_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right) A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{2}\right) \cdots A_{d}\left(m_{d-1}, \alpha_{d}\right) \tag{72}
\end{equation*}
$$

We get $d$ component tensors of order 2 or 3 . Their graph has the structure of a chain or train, hence the name. Figure 4 gives an example of a TT tensor.

The TT format maintains the positive characteristics of the Tucker format and overcomes most of the disadvantages of


Figure 4. A tensor of order 5 in TT representation.
the canonical format. However, the complexity now scales only quadratically in the ranks, or with $\mathcal{O}\left(q d r^{2}\right)$, for $r=\max \left\{r_{i}\right\}$. While the TT decomposition is not the only format that has this advantage, it is one of the most widely used ones and it will also be the standard format in this paper.

This format has been introduced to the mathematical realm by Oseledets et al. ${ }^{[182]}$ While it was developed independently, it can be seen as a special case of the Hierarchical Tucker (HT) decomposition. However, we will restrict ourselves to the TT format and deal with the HT format only briefly further down. As stated above, nearly everything of the following can be generalized to a general tensor tree format without effort, but notation becomes more complex.

In physics, the TT decomposition has been known as MPS since the late 1990s and many results can be taken directly from there. The name MPS is justified if we fix the physical indices. This yields a chain of matrix products:

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)=\mathbf{A}_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) \mathbf{A}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right) \cdots \mathbf{A}_{d-1}\left(\alpha_{d-1}\right) \mathbf{A}_{d}\left(\alpha_{d}\right) \tag{73}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\left[\mathbf{A}_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)\right]_{m_{i-1}, m_{i}}:=A_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)$.
Let it be noted that an important modification of the TT format follows if we introduce a contraction of rank greater than 1 between the first and last component, also called periodic boundary conditions,

$$
\begin{align*}
& U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right) \\
& =\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{1}} \cdots \sum_{m_{d}=1}^{r_{d}} A_{1}\left(m_{d}, \alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right) A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{2}\right) \cdots A_{d}\left(m_{d-1}, \alpha_{d}, m_{d}\right) \tag{74}
\end{align*}
$$

These uniform MPS (uMPS) are especially significant in physics. Verstraete et al. deal with uMPS that are also translation invariant, i.e. all components are equal $A_{1}=\ldots=A_{d} .{ }^{[199]}$ The graph of this decomposition is circular and therefore does not suffice criterion 3.3. As mentioned above, this poses a number of problems ${ }^{[193]}$ that are—in a nutshell—similar to those of the canonical format. For this reason, we will only deal with regular, noncircular MPS from now on.

The TT format can be considered as a multilayered subspace representation. This is achieved in a hierarchical way. ${ }^{[45]} \ln \Lambda_{1}$ we consider the subspace $\Xi_{1}$ given by the basis set $\left\{\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle: m_{1}=1, \ldots, r_{1}\right\}$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle:=\sum_{\alpha_{1}=1}^{q_{1}} A_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \tag{75}
\end{equation*}
$$

We proceed with a subspace of the partial tensor product space $\Xi_{\{1,2\}} \subset \Lambda_{1} \otimes \Lambda_{2}$ of dimension $r_{\{1,2\}} \leq q_{1} q_{2}$. Indeed $\Xi_{\{1,2\}}$ is defined through a new basis set $\left\{\left|\xi_{\left.m_{\{1,2\}}\right\}}\right\rangle: 1, \ldots, r_{\{1,2\}}\right\}$ where the new basis vectors are given in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{\{1,2\}}}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}=1}^{q_{1}} \sum_{\alpha_{2}=1}^{q_{2}} U_{\{1,2\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{\{1,2\}}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle . \tag{76}
\end{equation*}
$$

We observe that $\Xi_{\{1,2\}} \subset \Xi_{1} \otimes \Lambda_{2}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{\{1,2\}}\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{1}} \sum_{\alpha_{2}=1}^{q_{2}} A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{\{1,2\}}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{77}
\end{equation*}
$$

and thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{\{1,2\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{\{1,2\}}\right)=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{1}} A_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right) A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{\{1,2\}}\right) \tag{78}
\end{equation*}
$$

For this reason, when dealing with TT tensors, we simplify the notation and often set $\{1,2\} \simeq 2$, and in general $\{1,2, \ldots, i\} \simeq i$.

The tensor is recursively defined by the component tensors $A_{i}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left|\xi_{m_{3}}^{\{3\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{2}, \alpha_{3}} A_{3}\left(m_{2}, \alpha_{3}, m_{3}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{3}}^{\{3\}}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{m_{1}, m_{2}, \alpha_{2}, \alpha_{3}} A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{2}\right) A_{3}\left(m_{2}, \alpha_{3}, m_{3}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{3}}^{\{3\}}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{m_{1}, m_{2}, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \alpha_{3}} A_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right) A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{2}\right) A_{3}\left(m_{2}, \alpha_{3}, m_{3}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{3}}^{\{3\}}\right\rangle, \tag{79}
\end{align*}
$$

and so forth, by taking $\Xi_{\{1, \ldots, i+1\}} \subset \Xi_{\{1, \ldots, i\}} \otimes \Lambda_{i+1}$.
We may also proceed differently, e.g. $\Xi_{\{1,2,3,4, \ldots\}} \subset$ $\Xi_{\{1,2\}} \otimes \Xi_{\{3,4\}} \otimes \ldots$. Especially, it can be advantageous to start from the right hand side, i.e., taking $\Lambda_{i} \otimes \Xi_{\{i+1, \ldots, d\}}$ etc., obtaining basis vectors

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\zeta_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \in \Xi_{\{i, \ldots d\}} \tag{80}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us fix some $i \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$ and call it the root. This gives a hierarchical picture (see Fig. 5).

We consider the spaces $\mathcal{L}_{i}:=\Xi_{\{1, \ldots, i-1\}}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{j}:=\Xi_{\{i+1, \ldots, d\}}$. Their dimensions are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{L}_{i}=r_{i-1}, \operatorname{dim} \mathcal{R}_{i}=r_{i} \tag{81}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence, the full tensor $|\Psi\rangle$ is contained in the $r_{i-1} q_{i} r_{i-}$ dimensional subspace ${ }^{[47,200]}$

$$
\begin{gather*}
|\Psi\rangle \in \mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i} \cong \mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}  \tag{82}\\
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{m_{i-1}, m_{i}, \alpha_{i}} A_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\zeta_{m_{i}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \tag{83}
\end{gather*}
$$

A canonical but not necessary choice is that the basis vectors $\left|\xi_{1}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\xi_{r_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\zeta_{1}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\zeta_{r_{i}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle$ are orthogonal and normalized.

We will see in the following that this hierarchical or multilayered subspace approximation constitutes the mechanism behind the renormalization group formalism in the one-site DMRG.

An obvious observation ${ }^{[184]}$ following from the above will be that the minimal dimension $r_{i}$ is the rank of the $i$-th matricization (67):


Figure 5. Hierarchical picture of a Tensor Train with $A_{2}$ as the root.

Theorem. 3.4. (Seperation Theoram). For any tensor $U \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \cdots \times q_{d}}$, there exists a minimal TT (MPS) representation, thus called TT decomposition TT(U), such that for any $i=1, \ldots, d-1$ the dimensions $r_{i}$ of the contractions $m_{i}=1, \ldots, r_{i}$ are minimal and given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{i}=\operatorname{rank}\left([U]_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}}^{\alpha_{i+1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}}\right) \tag{84}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can change the hierarchy, e.g., by choosing the next component $A_{i+1}$ as the root. In most applications, it will then become necessary to shift the orthogonalization such that $\left\{\left|\xi_{m_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle: m_{i}=1, \ldots, r_{i}\right\}$ and $\left\{\left|\zeta_{m_{i+1}}^{\{i+2\}}\right\rangle: m_{i+1}=1, \ldots, r_{i+1}\right\}$ are orthonormal. This can be done by applying the SVD to the matricization of the $i$-th component

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[A_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}}^{m_{i+1}}=\left[\tilde{A}_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}}^{m_{i+1}} \Sigma_{i} \mathbf{Y}_{i}^{\dagger} \tag{85}
\end{equation*}
$$

and shifting $\Sigma_{i}, \mathbf{Y}_{i}^{\dagger} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i} \times r_{i}}$ to the next component

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\tilde{A}_{i+1}\right]_{m_{i}}^{\alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+2}}=\Sigma_{i} \mathbf{Y}_{i}^{\dagger}\left[A_{i+1}\right]_{m_{i}}^{\alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+2}} \tag{86}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $|\Psi\rangle$, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
|\Psi\rangle & =\sum_{m_{i-1}, m_{i}, \alpha_{i}} A_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\zeta_{m_{i}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \\
= & \sum_{\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i+1} m_{i-1}, m_{i}, m_{i+1}} A_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right) A_{i+1}\left(m_{i}, \alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+1}\right) \\
& \left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i+1}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\tilde{x}_{m_{i+1}}^{\{i+2\}}\right\rangle \\
= & \sum_{\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i+1} m_{i-1}, m_{i}, m_{i+1}} \tilde{A}_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right) \tilde{A}_{i+1}\left(m_{i}, \alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+1}\right) \\
& \left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i+1}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\sum_{m_{i}, m_{i+1}, \alpha_{i+1}}^{\{i+2\}}\right\rangle \\
m_{i+1} & \tilde{A}_{i+1}\left(m_{i}, \alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+1}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i+1}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\zeta_{m_{i+1}}^{\{i+2\}}\right\rangle \tag{87}
\end{align*}
$$

Alternatively one may use QR factorization for the orthogonalization, but it often advantageous to keep the small diagonal matrix $\Sigma_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i} \times r_{i}}$ containing the singular values in between two adjacent component tensors. In fact, this provides a standard representation or HSVD representation of $U$, see Figure 6

$$
\begin{equation*}
U=A_{1} \circ \Sigma_{1} \circ A_{2} \circ \Sigma_{2} \circ \cdots \circ \Sigma_{d-1} \circ A_{d} \tag{88}
\end{equation*}
$$

This representation has been developed independently by different authors. ${ }^{[152,153,186]}$ In physics, it is accredited to Vidal


Figure 6. A TT tensor of order 4 in standard representation.
and is hence also known as the Vidal representation. Very beneficial is the criterion that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{1}^{\dagger} A_{1}=\mathbf{I}_{r_{1}}, A_{d} A_{d}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{I}_{r_{d-1}} \tag{89}
\end{equation*}
$$

and for all $1<i<d$

$$
\begin{gather*}
{\left[A_{i} \circ \Sigma_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}}^{\alpha_{i}, m_{i}}\left(\left[A_{i} \circ \Sigma_{i} \Sigma_{m_{i-1}}^{\alpha_{i}, m_{i}}\right)^{+}=\mathbf{I}_{r_{i-1}},\right.}  \tag{90}\\
\left(\left[\Sigma_{i-1} \circ A_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}}^{m_{i}}\right)^{+}\left[\Sigma_{i-1} \circ A_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}}^{m_{i}}=\mathbf{I}_{r_{i} .} \tag{91}
\end{gather*}
$$

This means, we can shift the root, and thus the orthogonality, by simply shifting the density matrices $\Sigma_{i}$, see Figure 7.
This representation can be computed by applying a sequence of SVDs and storing the singular values. The procedure is called Hierarchical SVD (HSVD). It recovers the tensor exactly. However, as mentioned for the Tucker format and the HOSVD, the HSVD can be used for approximation by thresholding the singular values. For density matrices $\Sigma=\operatorname{diag}\left(\sigma_{1}, \ldots, \sigma_{r}\right)$, we define two thresholding operators

$$
\begin{align*}
& H_{\tilde{r}}(\Sigma)=\underset{1 \leq i \leq r}{\operatorname{diag}\left(\sigma_{i}\right), \tilde{r} \leq r,}  \tag{92}\\
& H_{\epsilon}(\Sigma)=\underset{\sigma_{i} \geq \epsilon}{\operatorname{diag}\left(\sigma_{i}\right), \epsilon>0} \tag{93}
\end{align*}
$$

and for TT tensors

$$
\begin{align*}
& H_{\tilde{\mathbf{r}}}(U)=A_{1} \circ H_{\tilde{r}_{1}}\left(\Sigma_{1}\right) \circ A_{2} \circ H_{\tilde{r}_{2}}\left(\Sigma_{2}\right) \circ \cdots \circ H_{\tilde{r}_{d-1}}\left(\Sigma_{d-1}\right) \circ A_{d}  \tag{94}\\
& H_{\epsilon}(U)=A_{1} \circ H_{\epsilon_{1}}\left(\Sigma_{1}\right) \circ A_{2} \circ H_{\epsilon_{2}}\left(\Sigma_{2}\right) \circ \cdots \circ H_{\epsilon_{d-1}}\left(\Sigma_{d-1}\right) \circ A_{d} \tag{95}
\end{align*}
$$

Again, this will not yield the best approximation of the tensor, as it does in the matrix case. As with Tucker tensors, we maintain a so called quasi optimality:

Theorem. 3.5. (Quasi Optimality). ${ }^{76,82,83,183}$ The truncation of the HSVD can be estimated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|U-H_{\tilde{\mathbf{r}}}(U)\right\| \leq \sqrt{d-1} \inf _{V \in \mathcal{M} \leq \mathbf{r}}\|U-V\|, \tag{96}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{M}_{\leq \tilde{r}}$ is the space of all tensors with TT rank not exceeding $\tilde{\boldsymbol{r}}$.

As most other results, the separation theorem and the quasi optimality can be readily generalized to all tree tensor networks. It is also possible to formulate a standard representation for other trees. In contrast to the parametrization (58), the subspace representation provides further essential information about minimal representability and approximability. It justifies the use of the notion of entanglement for the tensor $U$ or an appropriate low rank approximation of it. Entanglement here means the quantum correlation between the subsystem consisting of the
first $i$ orbitals and the subsystem consisting of the remaining orbitals, and it can be characterized by, e.g., the quantum Hartley entropy $\log r_{i}$, see in section 4.2.1. Without further conditions, these quantities are not well defined for tensor representations that do not have a tree structure. However, Verstraete developed an injectivity condition that aims at overcoming that problem for uniform MPS with periodic boundary conditions. ${ }^{[180]}$

### 3.6 Dimension trees and the hierarchical tensor decomposition

We briefly discuss the Hierarchical Tucker (HT) representation that has been introduced by Hackbusch and Kuhn ${ }^{[117]}$ in 2009 and has since received a lot of attention. This is also due to the fact that it is a reasonable generalization of the TT format.

The HT representation is defined by a dimension tree, usually a binary tree, where the leafs $U_{\{1\}}, \ldots, U_{\{d\}}=A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}$ constitute the physical components and the inner vertices $U_{t}$ are virtual. Hackbusch gives the following comprehensive notation in [45]: The vertices of the tree tensor network $\operatorname{TTNS}(U)=(V, E, H)$ are labeled
i. $t_{r}=\{1, \ldots, d\}$ for the root,
ii. $t \in L:=\{\{1\}, \ldots,\{d\}\}$ for the leafs, and
iii. $t \in V \backslash L$ for inner vertices, which have sons $t_{1}, \ldots, t_{p}$ that are an ordered partition of $t$, i.e.

$$
\bigcup_{i}^{p} t_{i}=t \text { and } \mu<v \forall \mu \in t_{i}, v \in t_{j}, i<j .
$$

For an inner vertex $t \subset V \backslash L$, with sons $t_{1}, \ldots, t_{p}$ (usually $p=2$ ), there is a subspace $\Xi_{t}$ defined by its basis set $\left\{\left|\xi_{m_{t}}^{\{t\}}\right\rangle: m_{t}=1, \ldots, r_{t}\right\}{ }^{[201]}$ given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{t}}^{\{t\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{t_{1}}} \cdots \sum_{m_{p}=1}^{r_{t_{p}}} U_{t}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{p}, m_{t}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\left\{t_{1}\right\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\xi_{m_{p}}^{\left\{t_{p}\right\}}\right\rangle \tag{97}
\end{equation*}
$$

The root $t_{r}=\{1, \ldots, d\}$, with sons $t_{1}, \ldots, t_{p}$, is to reconstruct the tensor

$$
\begin{equation*}
U=\sum_{m_{1}=1}^{r_{t_{1}}} \cdots \sum_{m_{p}=1}^{r_{t_{p}}} U_{t_{r}}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{p}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\left\{t_{1}\right\}}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|\xi_{m_{p}}^{\left\{t_{p}\right\}}\right\rangle \tag{98}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, the tensor $U$ is defined completely by the component tensors $U_{t}$, using the above representations recursively, see Figure 8. There are at most $\mathcal{O}(d)$ vertices and




Figure 7. A shift of orthogonality in the standard representation.


Figure 8. A tensor of order 3 in HT format.
consequently the complexity is $\mathcal{O}\left(q d r+d r^{p+1}\right)$. For $p=2$, we obtain $\mathcal{O}\left(q d r+d r^{3}\right)^{[45,47]}$.

As with the Tucker and the TT format, obtaining the HT format can be done by applying the SVD successively, in a hierarchical fashion. Again, we maintain a well-defined rank through a separation theorem, a quasi optimality of a truncated HSVD and so on.

In fact, the TT decomposition can be seen as a special case of the Hierarchical Tucker decomposition, where we use an unbalanced tree and omit the optimal subspaces in the leafs. However, in some cases, the binary tree structure can be advantageous. ${ }^{[202]}$ Additionally, the leafs $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}$ form exactly the optimal subspaces already observed in the Tucker decomposition. We refer to the literature cited above.

Arguably, this could make the HT format superior to the TT format. However, the notation becomes very messy and all notable theoretical results are valid for any tree tensor network. Hence, we refrain from dealing with the Hierarchical format and proceed with the TT format, keeping the similarities in mind.

### 3.7 Fixed rank manifolds and varieties

For many applications, we consider the set of tensors of fixed TT rank

$$
\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}:=\left\{U \in \mathbb{C}^{n_{1} \times \ldots \times n_{d}}: \mathbf{r}_{\pi}=\mathbf{r}\right\}
$$

This set is no longer a linear space nor is it convex. In order to parametrize this space, we introduce the component set $\mathcal{C}=\left\{\underline{U}=\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right): A_{i} \in \mathbb{C}_{*}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}\right\}$ and the map

$$
\begin{gather*}
\tau: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}},  \tag{99}\\
\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right) \mapsto \tau\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right):=U . \tag{100}
\end{gather*}
$$

For each $i, \mathbb{C}_{*}^{r_{i-1}} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}$ is the space of all elements with full multilinear rank:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbb{C}_{*}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}:=\left\{A_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}: \operatorname{rank}\left(\left[A_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}}^{\alpha_{i}, m_{i}}\right)\right.  \tag{101}\\
& \left.=r_{i-1}, \operatorname{rank}\left(\left[A_{i}\right]_{m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}}^{m_{i}}\right)=r_{i}\right\}
\end{align*}
$$

Let it be noted that this space is a smooth manifold ${ }^{[203]}$.
The map $\tau$ is clearly surjective onto $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$, but it is not injective: For any nonsingular matrix $\mathbf{X} \in G L\left(r_{i}\right) \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{r_{i} \times r_{i}}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{d}=A_{1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{i} \circ \mathbf{X} \circ \mathbf{X}^{-1} \circ A_{i+1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{d} \tag{102}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any parametrization of the form (58) shares this kind of nonuniqueness. But for tree tensor networks, this problem can be overcome: Let $\mathcal{G}$ be the Lie group

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{G}=\left\{g=\left(\mathbf{X}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{d-1}\right): \mathbf{X}_{i} \in \mathrm{GL}\left(r_{i}\right)\right\} \cong{ }_{i=1}^{d-1} \mathrm{GL}\left(r_{i}\right) \tag{103}
\end{equation*}
$$

We define the group action of $g \in \mathcal{G}$ on the components $u$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
g \cdot \underline{U}:=\left(A_{1} \circ \mathbf{X}_{1}, \mathbf{X}_{1}^{-1} \circ A_{2} \circ \mathbf{X}_{2}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{d-1}^{-1} \circ A_{d}\right) \tag{104}
\end{equation*}
$$

This action is smooth and it acts freely and properly on $\mathcal{C}_{1}^{[178]}$. The orbits are the equivalence classes, given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
[\underline{U}]=\mathcal{G} \cdot \underline{U}=\{g \cdot \underline{U}: g \in \mathcal{G}\} \tag{105}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, we obtain the quotient space

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{C} / \mathcal{G}=\{[\underline{U}]=\mathcal{G} \cdot \underline{U}: \underline{U} \in \mathcal{C}\} \tag{106}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the quotient map

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} / \mathcal{G}, \underline{U} \mapsto[\underline{U}] \tag{107}
\end{equation*}
$$

This yields a bijection

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\tau}: \mathcal{C} / \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \tag{108}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\tau=\hat{\tau} \circ \pi$. As a result, we get that $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$ is a smooth quotient manifold. ${ }^{[204]}$

This manifold can be globally embedded into the tensor space $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \subset \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}$ and we call it the $T T$ manifold. ${ }^{[132,178,184,205,206]}$ Thus, it is possible to define the tangent space $T_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$, which is a linear subset of $\mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}$. It is isomorphic to the horizontal space

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{H}_{\underline{U}} \mathcal{C}=\left\{\left(W_{1}, \ldots, W_{d}\right) \in \mathcal{C}:\left(\left[W_{i}\right]_{k_{i-1}, x_{i}}^{k_{i}}\right)^{\dagger}\left[A_{i}\right]_{k_{i-1}, x_{i}}^{k_{i}}=0 \forall i=1, \ldots, d-1\right\} \tag{109}
\end{equation*}
$$

via

$$
\begin{equation*}
(D \tau(\underline{U}))\left(W_{1}, \ldots, W_{d}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{d} A_{1} \circ \cdots \circ W_{i} \circ \cdots \circ A_{d} \tag{110}
\end{equation*}
$$

We remark that different definitions of the horizontal space are possible and that the choice of the gauge conditions above is not unique. It also depends on the choice of the root. In the above case, the root is set to be the last component $A_{d}$. The only requirement for a horizontal space is that it forms the tangent space of $\mathcal{C}$ via the direct sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{T}_{\underline{U}} \mathcal{C}=\mathrm{V}_{\underline{U}} \mathcal{C} \oplus \mathrm{H}_{\underline{U}} \mathcal{C} \tag{111}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathrm{V}_{\underline{U}} \mathcal{C}$ is the vertical space tangential to the orbits.
The manifold $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$ is an open set. However, in finite dimensions, its closure is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}}=\mathcal{M}_{\leq \mathbf{r}} . \tag{112}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is based on the observation that the matrix rank is an upper semicontinuous function. ${ }^{[45,201]}$ The singular points are exactly those where the actual rank is not maximal.

As mentioned above, the set $\mathcal{M}_{\leq r}$ is Zariski-closed and thus forms an algebraic variety, i.e., it is the set of common zeros of polynomials. This is easy to see: Indeed, we know from the separation theorem, that $\mathcal{M}_{\leq r}$ is the intersection of all tensors where the corresponding matricizations $[U]_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}}^{\alpha_{i+1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}}$ have at most rank $r_{i}$. The sets of matrices with rank at most $r_{i}$ are known to be algebraic varieties, ${ }^{[207]}$ each some zero-set of polynomials. ${ }^{[193]}$ Then, trivially, the intersection is the zero-set of the union of all such polynomials. Again, this property generalizes to all tensor trees.

### 3.8 Dirac-Frenkel variational principle or dynamical low rank approximation

Solving problems in the large tensor space is often too expensive due to the curse of dimensionality. We therefore restrict ourselves to tensors of fixed rank, i.e., to the space $\mathcal{M}_{\leq r}$. In general, the appropriate ranks are unknown. Thus, we start with an initial guess and increase the ranks when necessary. There are some greedy techniques available that serve this purpose. ${ }^{[201]}$

For the approximation with fixed rank, we consider the smooth manifold $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$, as this facilitates the theoretical framework. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
J(U) \rightarrow \min , J \in C^{1}\left(\mathbb{C}^{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}}, \mathbb{R}\right) \tag{113}
\end{equation*}
$$

be a minimization problem on the tensor space, for example the minimization of the energy functional (45a) in quantum chemistry.

For the restriction of $J$ to $\mathcal{M}_{r}$ we obtain the necessary condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
U=\underset{V \in \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}}{\operatorname{argmin}} J(V) \Rightarrow\langle\nabla J(V), \delta U\rangle=0 \forall \delta U \in \mathrm{~T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}, \tag{114}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., if $U$ minimizes $J$ on $\mathcal{M}_{r}$, then the gradient of $J$ must be orthogonal to the tangent space at $U$. Equivalently, if we denote the orthogonal projection onto $\mathrm{T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathrm{r}}$ with $P_{\mathrm{T}_{U}}$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\mathrm{T}_{U}} \nabla J(U)=0 . \tag{115}
\end{equation*}
$$

This variational approach can be generalized to the dynamical problem

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d t} U=f(U)  \tag{116}\\
U(0)=U_{0} \in \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \tag{117}
\end{gather*}
$$

This is a differential equation on $M_{r}$ if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(U) \in \mathrm{T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}, \forall U \in \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \tag{118}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus (116) can be solved approximately by projecting $f(U)$ on the tangent space $\mathrm{T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathrm{r}}$,


Figure 9. An illustration of the gradient flow on manifold $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(U):=P_{\mathrm{T}_{U}} f(U) \tag{119}
\end{equation*}
$$

and solving the projected differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} U=F(U) \tag{120}
\end{equation*}
$$

In accordance with the above, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} U-F(U)=0 \Longleftrightarrow\left\langle\frac{d}{d t} U-f(U), \delta U\right\rangle=0 \forall \delta U \in \mathrm{~T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \tag{121}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the context of time-dependent quantum chemistry, this is well-known as the Dirac-Frenkel variational principle. ${ }^{[116,177,208-211]}$

Replacing $f(U)$ with $-\nabla J(U)$ in (116) gives the gradient flow of $J$. Then (121) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\frac{d}{d t} U+\nabla J(U), \delta U\right\rangle=0 \forall \delta U \in \mathrm{~T}_{U} \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{r}} \tag{122}
\end{equation*}
$$

and a solution can be computed with the aforementioned methods, ${ }^{[47,177,180,206,212,213]}$ see Figure 9.

### 3.9 The alternating least squares algorithm

Consider the functional

$$
\begin{gather*}
j: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}  \tag{123}\\
\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right) \mapsto j\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right):=J\left(\tau\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{d}\right)\right) \tag{124}
\end{gather*}
$$

For $i \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$, we fix $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{i-1}$ and $A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{d}$ and solve the subproblem

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}^{+}:=\underset{V_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}}{\operatorname{argmin}} j\left(A_{1}, \ldots, V_{i}, \ldots, A_{d}\right) \tag{125}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is done in a successive manner and with alternating directions, which-for the best least squares fit $J(U)=\|U-B\|-j u s t i f i e s ~ t h e ~ n a m e ~ a l t e r n a t i n g ~ l e a s t ~ s q u a r e s ~$ (ALS) algorithm. The well-known Gauß-Seidel iteration is based on this strategy.

The TT format allows for a special formulation of this algorithm, sometimes dubbed the Alternating Linear Scheme to maintain the abbreviation. In this case, we can give a closed form for each subproblem and they can be solved using standard tools from linear algebra and numerical optimization.

In every step, one has to solve a small problem in order to achieve the minimum. Note that we allow $V_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}$, i.e.,
the ranks can decrease in each step. This automatically restricts $J$ to the variety $\mathcal{M}_{\leq r}$ since the components can have full rank or less, but obviously not more than that.

The small subproblems will be of the same kind as the original problem, i.e., linear equations will be turned into small linear equations and eigenvalue problems give rise to relatively small (generalized) eigenvalue problems. In physics this supports the renormalization picture, where an original large systems is reduced to a small system with the same ground state energy and possibly further physical quantities.

As we have observed before, this simple approach should be realized with some care. Since the representation is redundant, we can generally not minimize over the full parameter space $\mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}}$ but rather some nonlinear quotient space and it becomes necessary to introduce gauge conditions like above. However, this can be avoided if we choose to minimize only the root of the tensor as there is no redundancy in this part. After the minimization, it would then be crucial to restructure the hierarchy of the tensor and consider the next component as the root. This can be done by shifting the orthogonality as explained in (87). The extension to general hierarchical trees is straightforward.

Conforming with the earlier notation (82), each subproblem becomes a problem over a small subset that constitutes a subspace

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i} \subseteq \Lambda^{(d)}={\underset{i=1}{d} \Lambda_{i} . . . . . . . .} \tag{126}
\end{equation*}
$$

We define the orthogonal projector onto this space

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{i}: \Lambda^{(d)} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i} \tag{127}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we choose orthogonal bases for $\left|\xi_{1}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\xi_{r_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\zeta_{1}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\zeta_{r_{i}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{i} \simeq E_{i} E_{i}^{+}, \tag{128}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gather*}
E_{i}: \mathbb{C}^{r_{i-1} \times q_{i} \times r_{i}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}  \tag{129}\\
V_{i} \mapsto E_{i} V_{i}=A_{1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{i-1} \circ V_{i} \circ A_{i+1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{d} \tag{130}
\end{gather*}
$$

is the insertion operator also used elsewhere. ${ }^{[149]}$ This can easily be seen, as for $V \in \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}$ it holds

$$
\begin{align*}
P_{i}|\Psi\rangle= & \left.\sum_{m_{i-1}, m_{i}, \alpha_{i}} \tilde{V}_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes \zeta_{m_{i}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle  \tag{131}\\
& =\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} E_{i} \tilde{V}_{i}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle \tag{132}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{i}^{\dagger} V=\tilde{V}_{i} \tag{133}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $E_{i}$ is a bijection onto its image, and since it is also orthogonal, its hermitian is well-defined as its inverse. See Figure 10a for an illustration of the reduced basis.
(a)

(b)


Figure 10. Reduced basis representation for a) the ALS algorithm, and b) the two-site DMRG.

To formulate the procedure explicitly, we consider a linear system, i.e., a functional

$$
\begin{equation*}
J(U)=\frac{1}{2}\langle\mathbf{X} U, U\rangle-\langle B, U\rangle \tag{134}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{X} \in \operatorname{Lin}\left(\mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}, \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}\right)$ is a linear operator. This operator can be stored and viewed in a canonical-like format, i.e. as a sum of rank-one tensor products

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\sum_{k} \mathbf{X}_{1}^{k} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{X}_{d}^{k} \tag{135}
\end{equation*}
$$

or even in a TT-Matrix or Matrix Product Operator (MPO) format. ${ }^{[182]}$ This is irrelevant for the purpose of notation, but it can be of computational interest.

Since we have equivalence $\Lambda^{(d)} \cong \mathbb{C}^{q_{1} \times \ldots \times q_{d}}$, we also denote $\mathbf{X} \in \operatorname{Lin}\left(\Lambda^{(d)}, \Lambda^{(d)}\right)$ without changing the notation. For the right side, we denote $B \simeq|\Upsilon\rangle \in \Lambda^{(d)}$. A single subproblem can then be expressed as

$$
\begin{align*}
A_{i}^{+} & =\underset{V_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i}-1} \times a_{i} \times r_{i}}{\operatorname{argmin}} j\left(A_{1}, \ldots, V_{i}, \ldots, A_{d}\right) \\
& =\underset{V_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i}-1} \times a_{i} \times r_{i}}{\operatorname{argmin}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left\langle\mathbf{X} E_{i} V_{i}, E_{i} V_{i}\right\rangle-\left\langle B, E_{i} V_{i}\right\rangle\right) \\
& =\underset{V_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{r_{i}-1} \times a_{i} \times r_{i}}{\operatorname{argmin}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left\langle E_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{X} E_{i} V_{i}, V_{i}\right\rangle-\left\langle E_{i}^{\dagger} B, V_{i}\right\rangle\right) \tag{136}
\end{align*}
$$

At stationary points $V_{i}$ of the functional $j \circ E_{i}$, there holds the first order condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla\left(j \circ E_{i}\right)\left(V_{i}\right)=E_{i}^{\dagger} \mathbf{X} E_{i} \mathcal{V}_{i}-E_{i}^{\dagger} B=0 \tag{137}
\end{equation*}
$$

As such, one microiteration of the ALS algorithm can be defined as

$$
\begin{gather*}
U^{+}:=A_{1} \circ \cdots \circ A_{i}^{+} \circ \cdots \circ A_{d}  \tag{138}\\
A_{i}^{+}=\left(E_{i}^{+} \mathbf{X} E_{i}\right)^{-1} E_{i}^{+} B \tag{139}
\end{gather*}
$$

See Figure 11a for an illustration.
In the subspace notation, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle^{+}=\underset{|\Phi\rangle \in \mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i}}{\operatorname{argmin}}\left(\frac{1}{2}\langle\Phi| \mathbf{X}|\Phi\rangle-\langle\Upsilon, \Phi\rangle\right)=\left(P_{i} \mathbf{X} P_{i}\right)^{-1}|\Upsilon\rangle \tag{140}
\end{equation*}
$$

For this to work, $\mathbf{X}$ does not necessarily have to be invertible on the whole tensor space but only on the small subspaces $\mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i}$. This is guaranteed if $\mathbf{X}$ is invertible as a

## (a)



(b)



Figure 11. A microiteration of a) the ALS algorithm, and b) the two-site DMRG.
whole. Additionally, one can see that the spectrum of $\mathbf{X}$ on $\mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i}$ is a subset of the whole spectrum of $\mathbf{X}$ and in particular it holds $\operatorname{cond}_{i}(\mathbf{X}) \leq \operatorname{cond}(\mathbf{X}) .{ }^{[149]}$

This notation suggests that the ALS is closely related to the DMRG algorithm. In fact, it is often called the one-site DMRG as it can be seen as a simple modification of the that algorithm. In comparison, the ALS has the advantage that it optimizes the tensor on very small subspaces. On the other hand, the ranks $\mathbf{r}=\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{d-1}\right)$ remain fixed and have to be guessed at the beginning. In order to introduce higher ranks, one has to do this in a greedy fashion, e.g. by adding a rankone approximation of the residual. ${ }^{[214]}$

The classical two-site DMRG is a clever modification. Here, we minimize over the bigger subspace $\mathcal{L}_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i} \otimes \Lambda_{i+1} \otimes \mathcal{R}_{i+1}$, with the basis representation as in Figure 10b,

$$
\begin{align*}
|\Psi\rangle= & \sum_{m_{i-1}, m_{i+1}, \alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i+1}} U_{\{i, i+1\}}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i+1}, m_{i+1}\right)  \tag{141}\\
& \left.\times\left|\xi_{m_{i-1}}^{\{i-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i+1}}^{\{i+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \zeta_{m_{i+1}}^{\{i+2\}}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

i.e., we optimize two components at the same time, see Figure 11b. The advantage is that a subsequent SVD after the optimization step in order to separate the two components yields a new-and possibly higher—rank. To control the size of these new ranks, a further truncation is often required. Several strategies for dynamical rank selection can be implemented by considering the error in different norms. ${ }^{[25,149]}$

General convergence theory of both the ALS and the DMRG is subject to research. ${ }^{[175]}$ They converge only to stationary points or at most local minima, as global convergence cannot be guaranteed. ${ }^{[149]}$ Some convergence results have been published for a modified scheme, that proceeds in a Gauß-Southwell-like fashion and optimizes only the component with the largest residual. ${ }^{[207,215]}$ There are also many open questions in dealing with physical applications like the SCF iteration for HF models. The prescribed approach is completely variational, which has important consequences for computing gradients, e.g., forces. An efficient implementation plays a crucial role. The interested reader should consult fundamental contributions in the DMRG literature. ${ }^{[25,49,119,120]}$

As a summary of the section about tensor formats, we present Table 1 that compares the different decompositions, their complexity and their advantages and disadvantages in numerical computations.

## 4 Numerical Techniques

In order to utilize efficiently the theoretical framework discussed in the previous sections, one has to carry out various optimization tasks. Therefore, we start this section with a brief overview and highlight important concepts using simple examples. Then various iterative methods based on block forming procedure will be reviewed briefly and the concept of entanglement will be studied with respect to entanglement localization, geometrical network optimization, choosing optimal bases, and network initialization. In this section, our focus is on the numerical method, thus entropic measures of electronic properties of molecules will be discussed only very briefly.

For pedagogical reasons, tutorial examples will be presented for a text book example, the LiF molecule. Due to the ionicneutral curve crossing between the two lowest ${ }^{1} \Sigma^{+}$states of LiF, this system provides a good testing ground to demonstrate the efficiency of the quantum chemistry version of the density matrix renormalization group method (QC-DMRG) and tree tensor network state (QC-TTNS) algorithm. Our analysis is especially useful for systems in which the wave function character of molecules changes as a function of geometry. In the LiF example, it differs greatly on two sides of an avoided crossing in a diatomic molecule. Atomic orbital (AO) basis was adapted from the literature ${ }^{[216]}$ in order to match with previous DMRG computations. ${ }^{[51]}$ The AO basis set ${ }^{[216]}$ is suitable to describe the ionic and covalent LiF states as well. It consists of $9 s$ and $4 p$ functions contracted to $4 s$ and $2 p$ functions on the Li atom and $9 \mathrm{~s}, 6 \mathrm{p}$ and 1 d functions contracted to $4 \mathrm{~s}, 3 \mathrm{p}$ and 1d on the $F$ atom. For more details of the AO basis set, we refer to the original publication. ${ }^{[216]}$ The two lowest ${ }^{1} \Sigma^{+}$states of LiF around the equilibrium bond length can be qualitatively described by the $1 \sigma^{2} 2 \sigma^{2} 3 \sigma^{2} 4 \sigma^{2} 1 \pi^{4}$ and $1 \sigma^{2} 2 \sigma^{2} 3 \sigma^{2} 4 \sigma^{1} 5 \sigma^{1} 1 \pi^{4}$ configurations. ${ }^{[217]}$ For this reason, the MO basis was obtained

Table 1. Comparison between the different tensor formats introduced in section 3.

|  | Canonical | Tucker | TT | HT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Complexity | $\mathcal{O}$ (qdr) | $\mathcal{O}\left(r^{d}+q d r\right)$ | $\mathcal{O}\left(q d r^{2}\right)$ | $\mathcal{O}\left(q d r+d r^{3}\right)$ |
| Rank | No | Defined | Defined | Defined |
|  | $\max \left\{\mathbf{r}_{\text {Tucker }}\right\} \leq \max \left\{\mathbf{r}_{H T}\right\} \leq r_{\text {canonical }}$ |  |  |  |
| (weak) Closedness | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| ALS (1site DMRG) | Yes - but slow | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| DMRG | No | No | Yes | No |
| H(O)SVD | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Embedded Manifold | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Dyn. low Rank approx. | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Algebraic variety | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Recovery | ?? | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Quasi best approx. | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Best approx. | No | Exist | Exist | Exist |
|  |  | But NP-hard | But NP-hard | But NP-hard |

by CASSCF optimizations, with two active electrons on two active orbitals ( $4 \sigma$ and $5 \sigma$ ) (CAS(2,2)). MOs were optimized simultaneously for both ${ }^{1} \Sigma^{+}$states. $T_{i j}$ and $V_{i j k l}$ matrix elements of eqs. (44a) and (44b) are expressed in this MO basis. CASSCF optimizations were carried out with the GAMESS-US quantum chemistry package. ${ }^{[217]}$ Orbitals $1 \sigma, 2 \sigma$, and $3 \sigma$ were kept frozen in all presented configurational interaction (CI), MPS(DMRG) and TTNS computations. Six of the valence electrons were excited to all orbitals in the Cl calculation, which we use as reference to benchmark the QC-DMRG and QCTTNS results. Therefore, the active space in most of our CI, MPS(DMRG), and TTNS computations consists of 6 electrons and 25 orbitals: CAS $(6,25)$. In certain cases, a smaller active space, CAS( 6,12 ), will also be used. Using the same MO basis obtained as a result of CASSCF optimizations in the previous $\operatorname{CAS}(2,2)$ active space, the $\operatorname{CAS}(6,12)$ active space is constructed by excluding the three lowest lying occupied and 13 highest virtual orbitals from the total 28 orbitals. Cl results were obtained by utilizing standard full-Cl programs. $\mathrm{C}_{2 v}$ point group symmetry constraints were assigned during this study.

### 4.1 Basic terms and brief overview

4.1.1 The problem in the language of tensor factorization. Let us start this section with a very brief summary in order to highlight
the most important concepts. In the rest of the paper, a spinorbital will be called a local tensor space $\Lambda \cong \mathbb{C}^{q}$, with $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda=q$, and will be denoted by $\cdot$ Using the fermionic occupation number basis $(q=2),|\mu, s\rangle$ for all spins $s \in\{\downarrow, \uparrow\}$, with $\mu \in\{0,1\}$ occupation numbers, the operators (see (35)) are defined as

$$
\mathbf{a}^{+}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0  \tag{142}\\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{I}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 0 \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{s}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $\mathbf{a}^{\dagger}$ creates an electron, $\mathbf{I}$ is the identity matrix and $\mathbf{s}$ stands for the phase factor due to the antisymmetry of the fermionic wavefunction. As was constructed in section 2.7, it is also possible to use a $\mathbb{C}^{4}$ representation in which case $\cdot$ will represent a $M O(q=4)$. In this representation a state can be empty, singly occupied with spin-up or down particle, or doubly occupied, represented by the basis states $\left\{\left|\phi_{\alpha}\right\rangle\right\}$ for $\alpha \in\{1,2,3,4\}$ as $\left\{\left|\phi_{1}\right\rangle \equiv|-\rangle,\left|\phi_{2}\right\rangle \equiv|\downarrow\rangle,\left|\phi_{3}\right\rangle \equiv|\uparrow\rangle,\left|\phi_{4}\right\rangle \equiv|\uparrow \downarrow\rangle\right\}$. (In this sloppy but extremely convenient notation, on the one hand, $\left|\phi_{\alpha}\right\rangle \equiv|\alpha\rangle$ is written for simplicity, usual in quantum information theory, on the other hand, the 1,2,3,4 index-values (useful for computers) are identified with the $-, \downarrow, \uparrow, \uparrow \downarrow$ labels of the states (carrying physical meaning). Therefore, we can write the same basis state in four different ways, e.g., $\left|\phi_{2}\right\rangle \equiv\left|\phi_{\downarrow}\right\rangle \equiv|2\rangle \equiv|\downarrow\rangle$.) The relevant orbital operators (51a)(51b) in this basis are


$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{+}=\mathbf{a}^{\dagger} \otimes \mathbf{I}=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a}^{+}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \\
& \mathbb{\square}=\mathbf{I} \otimes \mathbf{I}=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{z}=\mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{s}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

We can put together two $\mathbb{C}^{4}$ tensor spaces, i.e., forming a twoorbital system ( $(\cdot)$, where $\Lambda^{\{1,2\}}=\Lambda_{1} \otimes \Lambda_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{\{1,2\}}=$ $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{1} \operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{2}=q^{2}=16$. The basis of the $\cdot \bullet$ system is given as $\left|\phi_{\alpha_{\{1,2\}}}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle$ where $\alpha_{\{1,2\}}=\left(\alpha_{1}-1\right) q+\alpha_{2}$. The relevant operators for the $\cdot \cdot$ system are formed as
$\mathbf{c}_{1, \uparrow}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger} \otimes \mathbb{\square}, \quad \mathbf{c}_{2, \uparrow}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{z} \otimes \mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger}, \quad \mathbf{c}_{1, \downarrow}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger} \otimes \mathbb{\square}, \quad \mathbf{c}_{2, \downarrow}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{z} \otimes \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}$.

A wavefunction (33a), (53) can be expressed in a general form as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}} U^{\{1,2\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{145}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the matrix $U^{\{1,2\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}\right)$ describes the quantum mechanical probability distribution of the basis of the combined system. Such wavefunctions can arise from the diagonalization of the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$, which is a $q^{2}$ by $q^{2}$ matrix (43), using the above representation of the creation and annihilation operators. The full diagonalization of $\mathbf{H}$ gives the exact solution (full-Cl), and the $m^{\text {th }}$ eigenstate of a two-orbital Hamiltonian is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{m}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}} U^{\{1,2\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{146}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}=1, \ldots, q$ and $m=1, \ldots, q^{2}$.
4.1.2 Change of basis, truncation and iterative diagonalization. The representation of the problem is, however, not unique. Using a unitary operator acting on $\Lambda^{\{1,2\}}, \mathbf{O}$, which leaves the eigenvalue spectrum of the Hamiltonian unchanged, we can carry out a change of basis

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H} \quad \mapsto \quad \mathbf{O H O}^{+} \tag{147}
\end{equation*}
$$

One possibility to achieve this is to apply the unitary operator to all operators used to construct the Hamiltonian (43), i.e.,
$\mathbf{c}_{1, \downarrow}^{+} \mapsto \mathbf{O} \mathbf{c}_{1, \downarrow}^{+} \mathbf{O}^{+}, \mathbf{c}_{2, \downarrow}^{+} \mapsto \mathbf{O} \mathbf{c}_{2, \downarrow}^{+} \mathbf{O}^{+}, \square \mapsto \mathbf{O} \mathbf{O}^{+}=\rrbracket, \mathbf{c}_{1, \uparrow}^{+} \mathbf{c}_{2, \uparrow}^{+} \mapsto \mathbf{O} \mathbf{c}_{1, \uparrow}^{+} \mathbf{c}_{2, \uparrow}^{+} \mathbf{O}^{+}$, etc. If the rows of the matrix $\mathbf{O}$ is constructed from the $\left|\Psi_{m}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle$ eigenstates (146), then we arrive at the eigenbasis representation of $\mathbf{H}$, i.e., $\mathbf{H}$ becomes diagonal and its elements are equivalent to the eigenvalues of the original problem.

The eigenvalue spectrum of $\mathbf{H}$ determines the physical properties of the system exactly. It is, however, possible to use an

Table 3. An example for the unitary matrix $\mathbf{O}$, used to transform the Hamilton to an $S^{z}$ eigenbasis.

| $O$ | $\downarrow \downarrow$ | $\downarrow \uparrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow$ | $\uparrow \uparrow$ | $S^{z}$ | $S$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\Psi_{1}^{\{1,2\}}$ | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | -1 | 1 |
| $\Psi_{2}^{\{1,2\}}$ | 0 | $1 / \sqrt{2}$ | $1 / \sqrt{2}$ | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\Psi_{3}^{\{1,2\}}$ | 0 | $1 / \sqrt{2}$ | $-1 / \sqrt{2}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $\Psi_{4}^{\{1,2\}}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

This transformation arises when the Hamiltonian commutes with the operators of the z-component and the magnitude of the total spin. Then the eigenvalues of these operators, $S^{z}$ and $S$ respectively, are proper quantum numbers, and are listed in the last two columns of the table.
approximate representation of $\mathbf{H}$, i.e., using a smaller basis as we select only $M<q^{2}$ eigenstates to form the $\mathbf{O}$ matrix, which becomes then rectangular. That is, we change over to a subspace $\Xi^{\{1,2\}}$ of the original tensor space $\Lambda^{\{1,2\}}$, (see section 3 ). This truncation leads to loss of information as $\mathbf{O O}^{+} \neq \mathbb{\square}$, but the kept eigenstates can still provide a good description of the low-energy physics of the problem.

If we are interested in the low-lying eigenstates of $\mathbf{H}$, it is not necessary to carry out a full diagonalization, but systematic application of the Hamiltonian to a randomly chosen state provides the lowest lying eigenstate. An extension of such power methods, like the Lánczos ${ }^{[218]}$ or Davidson ${ }^{[219]}$ methods, provides faster convergence rates, and excited states can also be calculated ${ }^{[20,124,125]}$.
4.1.3 Unitary transformation for two MOs. For the sake of simplicity let us consider an example of two $S=1 / 2$-spins. That is, the basis of the •• system is formed from the $\left|\phi_{1}\right\rangle \equiv|\downarrow\rangle,\left|\phi_{2}\right\rangle \equiv|\uparrow\rangle$ vectors with $q=2$, and the eigenvectors (146) can be formed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{m}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}} O\left(m, 2\left(\alpha_{1}-1\right)+\alpha_{2}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{148}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2} \in\{1,2\} \equiv\{\downarrow, \uparrow\}$. An example for the $\mathbf{O}$ matrix is shown in Table 3. The dimension of the $\mathbf{O}$ matrix is $M \times q^{2}$ where $M$ can take values between 1 and $q^{2}$ (truncation). The $M q^{2}$ elements of the matrix can also be represented by $q$ (two) $M \times q$ matrices, denoted with $\mathbf{B}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right)$, i.e., for each basis of the second spin we assign a matrix. This means that we take columns 1 and 3 to form $\mathbf{B}_{2}(\downarrow)$ and columns 2 and 4 for $\mathbf{B}_{2}(\uparrow)$, so, for the example given in Table 3 we have (without truncation)
$\left(\mathbf{B}_{2}(\downarrow)\right)_{m, \alpha_{1}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 / \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & -1 / \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & 0\end{array}\right), \quad\left(\mathbf{B}_{2}(\uparrow)\right)_{m, \alpha_{1}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}0 & 0 \\ 1 / \sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 1 / \sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1\end{array}\right)$.

We also denote this by $\left(\mathbf{B}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right)\right)_{m, \alpha_{1}}=B_{2}\left(m, \alpha_{2}, \alpha_{1}\right)$. It is easy to recognize that such $\mathbf{B}$ matrices form the basis of the matrix product state representation discussed in section 3. In the literature, usually $\mathbf{A}_{2} \equiv \mathbf{B}_{2}^{T}$ is used, that is, $A_{2}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m\right)=$ $B_{2}\left(m, \alpha_{2}, \alpha_{1}\right)$, and the wavefunction is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{m}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}} A_{2}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{150}
\end{equation*}
$$

4.1.4 Symmetries. In many systems, the time evolution governed by the Hamilton operator does not change the value of a measurable quantity, i.e., the Hamilton operator commutes with the operator associated to that measurable quantity. These operators are called symmetry operators and can be used to cast the Hilbert space to smaller independent subspaces. Consequently, instead of solving a large matrix eigenvalue problem, the eigenvalue spectrum can be determined by solving several smaller problems. Thus, the distinct quantum numbers helps to partition the Hilbert space into multiple independent subspaces corresponding to a given combination of quantum number values.

A given symmetry operator has the same eigenvectors as the Hamiltonian, thus the eigenstates of the Hamiltonian can be labelled by the eigenvalues of the symmetry operator (quantum number $Q$ ), and the Hilbert space can be decomposed into subspaces (sectors) spanned by the eigenvectors of each quantum number value. ${ }^{[220]}$ Introducing a quantum number based representation, the sparse operators can be decomposed to a set of smaller but dense matrices, furthermore the Hamiltonian operator becomes blockdiagonal.

For two orbitals, quantum numbers are formed from orbital quantum numbers as $Q_{\left\{\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{j}\right\}}=f\left(Q_{\alpha_{i}}, Q_{\alpha_{j}}\right)$, where function $f$ depends on the given symmetry. For $U(1)$ symmetries the $f\left(Q_{\alpha_{i}}, Q_{\alpha_{j}}\right)=Q_{\alpha_{i}}+Q_{\alpha_{j}}$ while for non-Abelian symmetries, such as for the conservation of total spin, more complex algebra is involved, based on the Wigner-Eckart theorem ${ }^{[141,221-224]}$. For more details, see 4.4.8.
4.1.5 Unitary transformation for $d$ number of MOs and tensor product approximation. The formalism discussed above can be extended to describe a system with $d \mathrm{MOs}$ denoted as $\cdots . . . \cdot$ The Hilbert space is formed as $\Lambda^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}}=\otimes_{i}^{d} \Lambda_{i}$ with $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}}=\prod_{i=1}^{d} \operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{i}=q^{d}$. A wavefunction is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1} \ldots \alpha_{d}} U^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots \alpha_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle, \tag{151}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $U^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}}$ is a tensor of order $d$, illustrated in Fig. 12 for the case $d=8$. Since the dimension of $U$ scales exponentially with $d$, we need approximative methods. The major aim is to find a good approximation of $U$ in terms of products of lower order tensors with smaller rank than the original problem.

One possibility is to systematically apply the procedure outlined in section 4.1.2 and in section 3 to describe one, two, three, ...d-orbital wavefunction. Starting with two orbitals, ${ }^{\bullet \bullet}$, the new (truncated) basis of the composed system is written as

| $U$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $\alpha_{1}$ | $\alpha_{2}$ | $\alpha_{3}$ | $\alpha_{4}$ | $\alpha_{5}$ | $\alpha_{6}$ | $\alpha_{7}$ | $\alpha_{8}$ |  |

Figure 12. Example $d=8$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (a) } \\
& \\
& \cline { 1 - 3 } \\
& \alpha_{1} \\
& A_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

(b)

(c)

$$
\overline{m_{l-1}} \overbrace{\alpha_{l}}^{A_{l}} \frac{m_{l}}{}
$$

(d)


Figure 13. a) Graphical representation of the two-orbital composed system using the procedure outlined in section 4.1.2, b) and after using identity (152c). c) Graphical representation of the component tensor and d) the $d=8$-orbital wavefunction as a network built from matrices.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{2}}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}} A_{2}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, m_{2}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{152a}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is shown schematically in Figure 13a. This can be rewritten as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{2}}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{1}, \alpha_{2}} A_{2}\left(m_{1}, \alpha_{1}, m_{2}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \tag{152b}
\end{equation*}
$$

using the identity

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}} A_{1}\left(1, \alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \quad \text { with } \quad A_{1}\left(1, \alpha_{1}, m_{1}\right)=\delta_{\alpha_{1}, m_{1}} \tag{152c}
\end{equation*}
$$

as is depicted in Figure 13b. We have the above form for $A_{1}(1$, $\alpha_{1}, m_{1}$ ) since here the transformation and truncation comes from the subspace approximation in $\Lambda^{\{1,2\}}$ common in a wide part of renormalization group methods in physics, shown in sections 4.1.2 and 4.1.3. On the other hand, when the transformations and truncation come from successive subspace optimization starting with the space $\Lambda_{1}$, e.g., based on SVD, then we have nontrivial basis change even inside $\Lambda_{1}$, see section 3.5. For three orbitals •••,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{3}}^{\{1,2,3\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{2}, \alpha_{3}} A_{3}\left(m_{2}, \alpha_{3}, m_{3}\right)\left|\xi_{m_{2}}^{\{1,2\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{3}}^{\{3\}}\right\rangle \tag{152d}
\end{equation*}
$$

This procedure can be extended iteratively using series of component tensors

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{l}}^{\{1,2, \ldots, l\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{l}}\left(\mathbf{A}_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) \mathbf{A}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right) \ldots \mathbf{A}_{l}\left(\alpha_{l}\right)\right)_{1, m_{l}}\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l}}^{\{l\}}\right\rangle \tag{152e}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the component tensor $A_{l}\left(m_{l-1}, \alpha_{l}, m_{l}\right)=\left(\mathbf{A}_{l}\left(\alpha_{l}\right)\right)_{m_{l-1}, m_{l}}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\xi_{m_{l}}^{\{1,2, \ldots, l\}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{l-1}, \alpha_{l}}\left(\mathbf{A}_{l}\left(\alpha_{l}\right)\right)_{m_{l-1}, m_{l}}\left|\xi_{m_{l-1}}^{\{1,2, \ldots, l-1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l}}^{\{l\}}\right\rangle \tag{152f}
\end{equation*}
$$

see in Figure 13c. As a result of this procedure, the $d$-orbital wavefunction is expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} \mathbf{A}_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) \mathbf{A}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right) \cdots \mathbf{A}_{d}\left(\alpha_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{2}}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle \tag{152g}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., for each MO we can assign a matrix $\mathbf{A}_{l}\left(\alpha_{l}\right)$, coming from the basis change in $\Lambda^{(1-1)} \otimes \Lambda_{l}$, and we form a network built from matrices as shown in Figure.13d. For more detailed derivations we refer to the original papers and review articles ${ }^{[18,21,31,39,64,152]}$ and section 3 .

Successively repeating the construction of section 4.1.4, the quantum numbers for the $q^{d}$ states of the $d$-orbital systems can be determined. As before, the full Hilbert space is decomposed into sectors based on these quantum numbers. If we consider only the case where the number of electrons with down and up spins is conserved, the quantum number is the vector $Q=\left(N_{\downarrow}, N_{\uparrow}\right)$ with $N=N_{\downarrow}+N_{\uparrow}$, then the dimension of the related sector $\Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}} \subset \Lambda^{(d)}$ in the Hilbert space is $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}=\binom{d}{N_{\downarrow}}\binom{d}{N_{\uparrow}}$.
4.1.6 Tensor topology. If we render the tensor spaces corresponding to the orbitals in a "one- or two-dimensional space" (higher dimensional extension is also possible), we form a chain- or lattice-topology of the tensor product representation. In some cases, this topology is also reflected by the physical lattice topology of the problem, i.e., one-dimensional-like polymers can be studied very well using the one-dimensional ten-sor-topology. As will be discussed below, one of the major aim is to find the best tensor topology for a given molecule.

### 4.2 Entanglement and correlations

In the previous subsections, we have considered basis change based on the Hamiltonian of the system. Another approach of basis change is based on an actual pure state of the system, and connected to the entanglement of that state. ${ }^{[155,156]}$

In quantum systems, correlations having no counterpart in classical physics arise. Pure states showing these strange kinds of correlations are called entangled, ${ }^{[155,156]}$ and the existence of these states has so deep and important consequences ${ }^{[157-159]}$ that Schrödinger has identified entanglement to be the characteristic trait of quantum mechanics. ${ }^{[160,161]}$ The QCDMRG and QC-TTNS algorithms approximate a composite system with long-range interactions, and it turned out that the results of quantum information theory ${ }^{[162,163]}$ can be used to understand the criteria of its convergence.
4.2.1 SVD and entanglement. The basic concept on which entanglement theory is built up is the entanglement with respect to a bipartition of the system. In this manybody situation, the system composed of $d$ orbitals can be treated as the sum of two subsystems (also called blocks), (A), (B) $\subset\{1,2, \ldots, d\}$. (They are disjoint, and their union gives the whole system.) The Hilbert spaces associated to them are $\Lambda^{(\mathrm{A})}$ and $\Lambda^{(\mathrm{B})}$, so $\Lambda^{\{1,2, \ldots, d\}} \cong \Lambda^{(\mathrm{A})} \otimes \Lambda^{(\mathrm{B})}$. After choosing bases in the subsystems, $\left\{\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle \in \Lambda^{(A)}\right\}$ and $\left\{\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(B)}}^{(B)}\right\rangle \in \Lambda^{(B)}\right\}$, the wavefunction (151) characterizing the pure state of the system can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{(A)}=1}^{\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(A)}} \sum_{\alpha_{(B)}=1}^{\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(B)}} U\left(\alpha_{(A)}, \alpha_{(B)}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(B)}}^{(\mathrm{B})}\right\rangle . \tag{153}
\end{equation*}
$$

Based on the UDV-decomposition of the matrix $U\left(\alpha_{(A)}, \alpha_{(B)}\right)$, one can find a product unitary transformation $\mathbf{O}_{A} \otimes \mathbf{O}_{B}$, which brings it to the Schmidt form ${ }^{[183]}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{m=1}^{r_{\text {sch }}} \sqrt{\omega_{m}}\left|\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{B})}\right\rangle \tag{154}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the vectors $\left|\xi_{m_{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\xi_{m_{(B)}}^{(\mathrm{B})}\right\rangle$ form orthonormal bases, also called Schmidt bases, in the Hilbert spaces of the two blocks, $\left\langle\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})} \mid \xi_{m^{\prime}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle=\left\langle\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{B})} \mid \xi_{m^{\prime}}^{(\mathrm{B})}\right\rangle=\delta_{m, m^{\prime}}$, moreover, the squares of the Schmidt coefficients $\sqrt{\omega_{m}}$ satisfy $0 \leq \omega_{m} \leq 1$ with the constraint $\sum_{m} \omega_{m}=1$. The summation goes up to the Schmidt rank, $r_{\text {sch }} \leq \min \left(\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(A)}, \Lambda^{(B)}\right)$. The $\sqrt{\omega_{m}}$ numbers are also called the singular values of $U\left(\alpha_{(A)}, \alpha_{(B)}\right)$, and the above form SVD. If the Schmidt rank $r_{\text {sch }}>1$, then $|\Psi\rangle$ is entangled (inseparable) and we say that the two blocks are entangled. ${ }^{[155]}$

If we consider the two-electron subspace of a two-orbital system, then the state

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\Psi_{\text {ent }}\right\rangle & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\left|\phi_{1}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{2}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle-\left|\phi_{2}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{1}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle\right) \\
& \equiv \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|\downarrow\rangle \otimes|\uparrow\rangle-|\uparrow\rangle \otimes|\downarrow\rangle) \tag{155a}
\end{align*}
$$

is an entangled state, while

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{\text {sep }}\right\rangle=\left|\phi_{1}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{2}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \equiv|\downarrow\rangle \otimes|\uparrow\rangle \tag{155b}
\end{equation*}
$$

is separable. Both vectors are almost in Schmidt form, (unitary transformation $\mathbf{O}_{2}$ acting as $\left|\phi_{2}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \mapsto\left|\phi_{1}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\phi_{1}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle \mapsto-\left|\phi_{2}^{\{2\}}\right\rangle$ brings the first one to a Schmidt form) and the squared Schmidt coefficients can immediately be read: $\omega_{1}=\omega_{2}=1 / 2$ in the first case and $\omega_{1}=1, \omega_{2}=0$ in the second.

For a system characterized by a pure state $|\Psi\rangle$, the state of the subsystem (A) is encoded in the reduced density matrix of the subsystem,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}=\operatorname{Tr}_{\mathrm{B}}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| . \tag{156}
\end{equation*}
$$

The subsystem of interest is usually labelled by (A) and the other subsystem (B), which can also be considered as the "environment" of (A). The operation $\operatorname{Tr}_{\mathrm{B}}$ means carrying out the trace over subsystem (B), that is, $\operatorname{Tr}_{B}(\mathbf{X} \otimes \mathbf{Y})=\mathbf{X} \operatorname{Tr}(\mathbf{Y})$, leading to the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}=\sum_{\alpha_{(A)}, \alpha_{(A)}^{\prime}}\left[\sum_{\alpha_{(B)}} U\left(\alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}, \alpha_{(\mathrm{B})}\right) \overline{U\left(\alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}^{\prime}, \alpha_{(\mathrm{B})}\right)}\right]\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}^{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right|, \tag{157}
\end{equation*}
$$

having the matrix elements in the square bracket

$$
\begin{align*}
\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}\left(\alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}, \alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}^{\prime}\right) & \equiv\left\langle\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}^{(A)}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right| \rho^{(\mathrm{A})}\left|\phi_{\alpha_{(A)}^{\prime}}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{\alpha_{(B)}} U\left(\alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}, \alpha_{(\mathrm{B})}\right) \overline{U\left(\alpha_{(\mathrm{A})}^{\prime}, \alpha_{(\mathrm{B})}\right)} \tag{158}
\end{align*}
$$

(Similar expressions can be written for subsystem (B).) If we write (156) using the Schmidt form (154), we get immediately a diagonal form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}=\sum_{m} \omega_{m}\left|\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right\rangle\left\langle\xi_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})}\right| \tag{159}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the Schmidt basis.
On the other hand, in this pure case, the information on the entanglement between the (A) and (B) blocks of the system is encoded in the density matrices of the blocks. It turns out that the eigenvalue spectrum of $\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}$ is enough for the complete characterization of the entanglement between blocks (A) and (B), and, as we have seen in (159), it follows from the Schmidt decomposition that the eigenvalues of $\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}$ are exactly the squared Schmidt coefficients $\omega_{m}$ in (154). (The same holds for $\rho^{(\mathrm{B})}$.) Several quantitative measures of entanglement can be extracted from this eigenvalue spectrum. ${ }^{[225,226]}$ These are usually the different kinds of entropies of the reduced density matrix, characterizing its mixedness. The most commonly used measure is the von Neumann entropy ${ }^{[227,228]}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{(\mathrm{A})} \equiv S\left(\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}\right)=-\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{(\mathrm{A})} \ln \rho^{(\mathrm{A})} \tag{160}
\end{equation*}
$$

others include the more general one-parameter family of Rényi entropies ${ }^{[225,226,229]}$ for parameter lower than 1, the Hartley entropy $\operatorname{In} r_{\text {sch }}$ (which can be considered as the Rényi entropy in the limit when its parameter tends to 0 ), the Schmidt rank $r_{\text {sch }}$ itself, the one-parameter family of Tsallis entropies, ${ }^{[230]}$ the concurrence-squared, or linear entropy (the latter two are, up to normalization, the Tsallis entropy for parameter 2). On the other hand, the von Neumann entropy is the Rényi or Tsallis entropy in the limit when their parameters tend to 1 .

The definitive property, based on which the entropies are proper measures of entanglement, is the monotonity under LOCC: entanglement is quantum correlation, so any measure of entanglement must not increase under applying Local Operations (that is, inside subsystems) and using Classical Communication between subsystems. ${ }^{[156,225,226,231,232]}$ Here we have to give an important remark. This locality concept is understood with respect to the notion of subsystems. The subsystems have very different meanings in the first- and secondquantized description of quantum systems. In the first quantized case, the subsystems are the electrons (they can occupy different orbitals), their entanglement (particle-entanglement) can not increase if we apply LOCC for them, for example, if we change the local basis $\varphi_{i}$ in $\mathcal{V}^{d}$ from which the Slater determinants are built up (see section 2.2), especially, changing from atomic orbitals to MOs or reverse. In the second-quantized case, the subsystems are the orbitals or sites (they can be occupied by electrons), their entanglement (orbital-entanglement or site-entanglement) can not increase if we apply LOCC for them (see section 2.4), for example, if we change the local basis $\left|\phi_{\mu_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle$ in $\Lambda_{i}$ for a local subspace approximation. However, since the isomorphism $l$ in eq. (32) is nonlocal, i.e., it does not respect the tensor product structure either in $\mathcal{F}^{d}$ or in $\Lambda^{(d)}$, a basis change in $\mathcal{V}^{d}$ although does not change the particle-
(a)

(b)


Figure 14. a) Contiguous block of orbitals to determine block entropy. b) Block entropy profile $S^{\{1,2, \ldots,\}}$ obtained with the DMRG method for a onedimensional critical model with soft modes at $k= \pm 2 \pi / 3$. (Reproduced from Ref. [235], with permission from American Physical Society.)
entanglement but does change the orbital-entanglement. (c.f. eq. (46).) This will be utilized in section 4.4.6 for reducing the overall orbital-entanglement by changing locally the particle basis.

Once the eigenvalues $\omega_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})}$ of $\rho^{(\mathrm{A})}$ are known, the von Neumann entropy (160) can be calculated, leading to

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{(\mathrm{A})}=-\sum_{m} \omega_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})} \ln \omega_{m}^{(\mathrm{A})} \tag{161}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the examples (155) above, one can conclude that the entanglement measured by the von Neumann entropy for $\left|\Psi_{\text {ent }}\right\rangle$ is $S^{(A)}\left(\Psi_{\text {ent }}\right)=\ln 2$, while for $\left|\Psi_{\text {sep }}\right\rangle$ is $S^{(A)}\left(\Psi_{\text {sep }}\right)=0$. It turns out also that $\left|\Psi_{\text {ent }}\right\rangle$ is maximally entangled in the two-electron subspace of a two-orbital system. (The base of the logarithm in the above expressions are often set to 2 , in which case the von Neumann entropy is measured in the units called qubit, the quantum analogy of the bit in classical information theory.)

In eq. (160), subsystem (A) can be formed, in general, from an arbitrary subset of the total set of orbitals. If it is only one orbital, $(A)=\{i\}$, then its entropy is called orbital entropy, $S_{i}$. The number of orbitals included in (A) can be tailored to obtain specific information on the distribution of entanglement, which can then be used to characterize the physical nature of the system.
4.2.2 Block entropy. The usual practice is to take one, two, or more neighboring orbitals into a subsystem (called also block), as is shown in Figure 14a for a one-dimensional topology used in DMRG. The scaling behavior of the von Neumann entropy $S^{\{1,2, \ldots, /\}}$ of a contiguous block of the first I orbitals with the number of orbitals has also been used to study the quantum phases of one-dimensional systems. For systems with local interactions, this "block entropy" diverges logarithmically with block size / for critical systems, but saturates for gapped systems, ${ }^{[23,233]}$ and in certain cases its profiles provide further information about the energy spectrum. ${ }^{[234,235]}$ For example, the oscillation with a period of three as is shown in Figure 14 identifies soft modes with a wavevector, $k= \pm 2 \pi / 3$. In contrast to this, the block entropy has more complex behavior when nonlocal interactions are present ${ }^{[11,25]}$ and its profile depends strongly on the ordering of the orbitals along the onedimensional chain as will be discussed below. As an example, block entropy profiles obtained with the DMRG method for the LiF molecule at bond length $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. are shown in Figure 15. At this point, it is worth to note that not only the profiles are different but the maximum of the block entropy is much smaller in the latter case. This property will be used to optimize tensor methods as will be discussed below.


Figure 15. Block entropy profile obtained by the DMRG method for the LiF molecule at bond length $d_{\text {Li-F }}=3.05$ a.u. for a nonoptimized tensor topology a) and for an optimized tensor topology b).
4.2.3 One-orbital and two-orbital entropy and mutual information. Orbitals lying closer to and further away from the Fermi surface possess larger and smaller orbital entropy, respectively. ${ }^{[25]}$ The orbital entropy is related to the mixedness of a local state and it is expressed by the eigenvalues of the oneorbital reduced density matrix (as shown in (161)) for a given orbital $(A)=\{i\}$, as shown in Figure 16a. Namely,

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{i}=-\sum_{\alpha} \omega_{\alpha, i} \ln \omega_{\alpha, i} \tag{162}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $i=1, \ldots, d$ is the orbital index, while $\omega_{\alpha, i}$ for $\alpha=1, \ldots$, $q$ stands for the eigenvalues of the reduced density matrix of orbital $i$. The amount of contribution to the total correlation energy of an orbital can be detected by the single-orbital entropy. Since the total system is in a pure state, i.e., we calculate the ground state or an excited state, the sum of all singleorbital entropy,

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{\mathrm{tot}}=\sum_{i} S_{i}, \tag{163}
\end{equation*}
$$

gives the amount of total correlation encoded in the wavefunction. ${ }^{[55,150]}$ Since the full system is in a pure state, this is equal to the total entanglement encoded in the state/wavefunction. This quantity can be used to monitor changes in entanglement as system parameters are adjusted, for example, changing bond length or other geometrical properties. ${ }^{[95,97,100]}$

A useful quantity to numerically characterize all kinds of correlations between pairs of orbitals is the mutual information

$$
\begin{equation*}
l_{i j}=S_{i}+S_{j}-S_{i j} \tag{164}
\end{equation*}
$$

calculated between two generally placed orbitals, $i$ and $j$ as shown in Figure 16b. Here $S_{i}$ is the von Neumann entropy, eq. (160), for a subsystem (A) chosen to be the single orbital $i$, and $S_{i j}$ is the entropy for (A) chosen to consist of orbitals $i$ and $j$. The mutual information $l_{i j}$ describes the correlation between the two selected subsystems, orbitals $i$ and $j$, embedded in a larger system. $I_{i j}$ yields a weighted graph of the overall correlation of both classical and quantum origin among the orbitals.

The mutual information defined in this way has been introduced previously to study correlation between neighboring orbitals in spin and fermionic chains with local interactions ${ }^{[170]}$ and in quantum chemical problems in order to optimize the network structure ${ }^{[11,61]}$ as well as to study molecular bonding properties in various transition metal complexes. ${ }^{[11-13,89]}$ Therefore, these quantities provide chemical information about the system, especially about bond formation and nature of static and dynamic correlation. ${ }^{[11,13,84,97,171]}$ As an example, $S_{i}$ and $I_{i j}$ are shown in Figures 17 and 18, respectively, for the equilibrium bond length $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. and at large separation $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}$ $=13.7$ a.u. It is clear form Figure 18 that some orbitals are strongly entangled with several other orbitals while some orbitals are entangled with only a few others and some are almost disentangled from the system.
4.2.4 One-orbital and two-orbital reduced density matrix and generalized correlation functions. It has been shown ${ }^{[95,170]}$ that one can also analyze the sources of entanglement encoded in $I_{i j}$ by studying the behavior of the matrix elements of the two-orbital reduced density matrix $\rho_{i j}$. The $d$-orbital wave function can be written in terms of the single-orbital $q$-dimensional basis as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Psi\rangle=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{d}\right)\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle \tag{165}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $\alpha_{j}$ labels single-orbital basis states and the set of coefficients $U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)$ is viewed as a tensor of order $d$. The one- and two-orbital reduced density matrices $\rho_{i}=\operatorname{Tr}_{1, \ldots, l, \ldots, d}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| \quad$ and $\quad \rho_{i j}=\operatorname{Tr}_{1, \ldots, l, \ldots, j, \ldots, d}|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| \quad$ can be
(a)

(b)


Figure 16. Partitioning of the system into single-orbital $(A)=\{i\}$ and double-orbital $(A)=\{i, j\}$ subsystems, in order to determine single-orbital entropy $S_{i}$ a) and two-orbital entropy $S_{i j}$ b).


Figure 17. One orbital entropy profile for the LiF molecule at bond length a) $\mathrm{LiF}=3.05 \mathrm{a} . \mathrm{u}$. and at b) $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=13.7$ a.u. Symbols label the irreducible representations of the molecular orbitals in the $\mathrm{C}_{2 v}$ point group.
calculated by taking the appropriate partial traces of $|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$, leading to the matrix elements

$$
\begin{gather*}
\rho_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}\right)=\left\langle\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right| \varrho_{i}\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}^{\prime}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \\
=\sum_{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}} U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right) \overline{U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)},  \tag{166a}\\
\rho_{i j}\left(\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{j}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right)=\left\langle\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}} \phi_{\alpha_{j}}^{\{j\}}\right| \varrho_{i j}\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}^{\prime}}^{\{i\}} \phi_{\alpha_{j}^{\prime}}^{\{j\}}\right\rangle \\
=\sum_{\substack{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \ldots, \ldots \\
\gamma_{j}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}}} U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}, \ldots, \alpha_{j}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right) \overline{U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}, \ldots, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)}
\end{gather*}
$$

(166b)
The dimension of $U$ grows exponentially with system size $d$, thus, such full tensor representations of the wave function, needed for the computation of the reduced density matrices above, are only possible for small system sizes. Using the methods described in the previous and following sections, the $d$ th-order tensor $U$ can, in many cases, be efficiently factorized into a product of matrices, as e.g., in (152g)

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)=\mathbf{A}_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) \mathbf{A}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right) \ldots \mathbf{A}_{d}\left(\alpha_{d}\right), \tag{167}
\end{equation*}
$$

(a)

leading to an MPS representation of the wave function, where the $\mathbf{A}_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ are $M \times M$ matrices in general. ${ }^{[19]}$ For systems with open boundary conditions, $\mathbf{A}_{1}\left(\alpha_{1}\right)$ and $\mathbf{A}_{d}\left(\alpha_{d}\right)$ are row and column vectors, respectively. In the MPS representation, the calculation of $\rho_{i}$ and $\rho_{i j}$ by means of eqs. (166a) and (166b) corresponds to the contraction of the network over all states except those at orbital $i$ in the first case and at orbital $i$ and $j$ in the second, as depicted in Figure 19 for a chain with $d=8$ orbitals.

From a different point of view, the matrix elements of $\varrho_{i}$ and $\varrho_{i j}$ in eqs. (166a) and (166b) can be written as expectation values of projection-like operators acting on the corresponding orbitals Let the transition operators be defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{T}^{(m)}=\left|\phi_{\alpha^{\prime}}\right\rangle\left\langle\phi_{\alpha}\right|, \quad \text { for } m=1, \ldots, q^{2} \tag{168}
\end{equation*}
$$

which describe a possible transition between the initial states $\left|\phi_{\alpha}\right\rangle$ and the final states $\left|\phi_{\alpha^{\prime}}\right\rangle$ understood for a given orbital, with the numbering rules

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha-1=((m-1) \bmod q), \quad \alpha^{\prime}-1=\lfloor(m-1) / q\rfloor, \tag{169a}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
m-1=(\alpha-1) q+\alpha^{\prime}-1 . \tag{169b}
\end{equation*}
$$

(b)


Figure 18. (Color online) Mutual information represented as a two-dimensional weighted graph for the LiF molecule at bond length a) $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. and at b) $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=13.7$ a.u. Colors indicate different strengths of $I_{i j}$ and the symbols label the irreducible representations of the molecular orbitals in the $C_{2 v}$ point group.


Figure 19. Contraction of the MPS network to calculate the one- a) and two-orbital b) reduced density matrices $\varrho_{i}$ and $\varrho_{i j}$ for a chain with $d=8$.
(Here $\lfloor x\rfloor$ denotes the floor function, the integral part of $x$.) These operators can be extended to operate on the complete Hilbert space consisting of $d$ local Hilbert spaces labeled by $i=1, \ldots, d$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{T}_{i}^{(m)}=\mathbb{\square} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbb{\square} \otimes \mathcal{T}^{(m)} \otimes \mathbb{\square} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathbb{\square}, \tag{170}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the operator $\mathcal{T}^{(m)}$ in the $i$-th position.
One can now easily check that the matrix elements of the one- and two-orbital reduced density matrices, given in (166a)-(166b), can be expressed as the expectation values of the transition operators for one and for two sites, respectively, as follows

$$
\begin{align*}
\rho_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}\right) & =\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)}\right\rangle,  \tag{171a}\\
\rho_{i j}\left(\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{j}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) & =\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)} \mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle, \tag{171b}
\end{align*}
$$

using the numbering rules (169) for each orbitals. That is, the matrix representation of the one-orbital reduced density operator $\varrho_{i}$ can be constructed from expectation values of operators describing transitions between the single-orbital basis $\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle$, while the two-orbital reduced density operator $\varrho_{i j}$ can be constructed from expectation values of operators describing transitions between two-orbital basis states $\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}} \phi_{\alpha_{j}}^{\{j\}}\right\rangle \equiv\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{j}}^{\{j\}}\right\rangle$. This is a generalization of the procedure introduced in the DMRG context for spin-1/2 fermion models. ${ }^{[61,83]}$ In the following, we refer to the expectation values of pairs of state-transition operators in eq. (171b) as generalized correlation functions in order to distinguish them from conventional correlation functions, i.e., those based on physically motivated self-adjoint operators such as local spin or density operators. For (171a), note that when the individual local basis states are completely distinguished by Abelian quantum numbers, the one-orbital density matrix is diagonal and has the form $\rho_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}\right)=\delta_{\alpha_{i}, \alpha_{i}^{\prime}}\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(\alpha_{i}(q-1)+\alpha_{i}^{\prime}\right)}\right\rangle$, providing the spectrum immediately.

A given generalized correlation function measures the expectation value of the resonance amplitude between the initial and final states within a particular environment. In general, $\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)} \mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle$ contains both connected and disconnected contri-
butions between subsystems $i$ and $j$. Therefore, it can, in general, scale to a finite value as the distance $I=|i-j|$ is increased, even if the physical correlation function goes to zero for large $I$. In order to circumvent this behavior, one generally study the connected part of the generalized correlation functions, $\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)} \mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle_{C}=\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)} \mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle-\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)}\right\rangle\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle$, where the disconnected part, given by the product of the expectation values of the local transition operators, is subtracted out. Note that the mutual information (164) is formulated in such a way that the disconnected parts of the generalized correlation functions do not contribute. These can be used to identify the relevant physical processes that lead to the generation of the entanglement. ${ }^{[95,170]}$

As an example, let us take the spin- $1 / 2$ fermionic model. Here the single-electron basis states can be empty, occupied with a single spin-down or spin-up electron, or doubly occupied, with the corresponding basis states denoted as $|-\rangle$, $|\downarrow\rangle,|\uparrow\rangle$, and $|\uparrow \downarrow\rangle$, as before. Since the local basis is $q=$ fourdimensional, $q^{2}=16$ possible transition operators $\mathcal{T}^{(m)}$ arise, as is displayed in Table 4. They can be written explicitly in terms of local fermion creation $\mathbf{c}_{i, s^{\prime}}^{\dagger}$ annihilation $\mathbf{c}_{i, s}$ and number $\mathbf{n}_{i, s}$ operators (51c)-(51d) as

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
\mathcal{T}^{(1)} & =\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow}\right)\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}\right), & \mathcal{T}^{(2)}=\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow}\right) \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(3)} & =\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}\right), & & \mathcal{T}^{(4)}=-\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(5)} & =\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow}\right) \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}, & & \mathcal{T}^{(6)}=\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow}\right) \mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(7)}=-\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}, & & \mathcal{T}^{(8)}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(9)}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger}\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}\right), & & \mathcal{T}^{(10)}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow},  \tag{172}\\
\mathcal{T}^{(11)}=\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow}\left(\mathbb{0}-\mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}\right), & & \mathcal{T}^{(12)}=-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(13)}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}, & \mathcal{T}^{(14)}=\mathbf{c}_{\uparrow}^{\dagger} \mathbf{n}_{\downarrow}, \\
\mathcal{T}^{(15)}=-\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{c}_{\downarrow}^{\dagger}, & \mathcal{T}^{(16)}=\mathbf{n}_{\uparrow} \mathbf{n}_{\downarrow} .
\end{array}
$$

The nonvanishing matrix elements of the two-orbital density matrix $\rho_{i j}$ are given in Table 5. Note that the two-orbital density matrix is block-diagonal in the particle number $N_{c}$ and in the $z$ component of the spin $S^{z}$. The block-diagonal structure is evident, and the values of $m_{i}$ and $m_{j}$ appropriate for each matrix element are displayed.

Illustrating these, some generalized correlation functions are plotted for the LiF molecule in Figure 20. As was mentioned in the beginning of this section, ${ }^{[95,170]}$ the generalized correlation functions (matrix elements for $\varrho_{i j}$ ) are connected to the values of the mutual information $I_{i j}$, which is plotted in Figure 34 later.

Table 4. Single-orbital operators describing transitions between singleorbital basis states for a $S=1 / 2$ spin system.


|  | $\begin{aligned} & n=0, \\ & s_{z}=0 \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  | $z=\frac{1}{2}$ | $\begin{aligned} & n=2, \\ & s_{z}=-1 \end{aligned}$ |  |  | $s_{z}=0$ |  | $n=2, s_{z}=1$ | $n=$ | $=-\frac{1}{2}$ | $n=$ |  | $n=4, s_{z}=0$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\rho_{i, j}$ | - - | - $\downarrow$ | $\downarrow$ - | - $\uparrow$ | $\uparrow$ - | $\downarrow \downarrow$ | $-\uparrow \downarrow$ | $\downarrow \uparrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow$ - | $\uparrow \uparrow$ | $\downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow \downarrow$ | $\uparrow \uparrow \downarrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow$ | $\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$ |
| $-\downarrow$ <br> $\downarrow-$ <br> $-\uparrow$ <br> $\uparrow-$ <br> $\downarrow \downarrow$ <br> $-\uparrow \downarrow$ <br> $\downarrow \uparrow$ <br> $\uparrow \downarrow$ <br> $\uparrow \downarrow-$ <br> $\uparrow \uparrow$ <br> $\downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$ <br> $\uparrow \downarrow \downarrow$ <br> $\uparrow \uparrow \downarrow$ <br> $\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow$ <br> $\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$ | $(1,1)$ | $\begin{aligned} & (1,6) \\ & (5,2) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (2,5) \\ & (6,1) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} (1,11) \\ (9,3) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} (3,9) \\ (1,11) \end{gathered}$ | $(6,6)$ | $\begin{gathered} (1,16) \\ (5,12) \\ (9,8) \\ (13,4) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (2,15) \\ & (6,11) \\ & (10,7) \\ & (14,3) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (3,14) \\ & (7,10) \\ & (11,6) \\ & (15,2) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} (4,13) \\ (8,9) \\ (12,5) \\ (16,1) \end{gathered}$ | $(11,11)$ | $\begin{aligned} & (6,16) \\ & (14,8) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (8,14) \\ & (16,6) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (11,16) \\ & (15,12) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & (12,15) \\ & (16,11) \end{aligned}$ | $(16,16)$ |
| For better readability only the operator number indices $m$ are shown, that is, $\left(m_{i}, m_{j}\right)$ corresponds to $\left\langle\mathcal{T}_{i}^{\left(m_{i}\right)} \mathcal{T}_{j}^{\left(m_{j}\right)}\right\rangle$. Here $N_{c}$ and $S^{z}$ denote the particlenumber and $z$ spin component quantum numbers of the two orbitals. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

(a) Hoppings

(b) Flipping


Figure 20. Pictorial representation of the absolute value of the generalized correlation functions used to construct the lower-triangular elements of the two-orbital reduced density matrix for LiF at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05 \mathrm{a} . \mathrm{u}$. and at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=13.7 \mathrm{a}$. u. Strength of transition amplitudes between initial $\left(\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{i\}} \phi_{\alpha_{i}}^{\{j\}}\right\rangle\right)$ and final states $\left(\left|\phi_{\alpha_{i}^{\prime}}^{\{i\}} \phi_{\alpha_{j}^{\prime}}^{\{j\}}\right\rangle\right)$ on orbital $i$ and $j$ are indicated with different line colors. Note the different scales used for colorbars in case of the various figures.
(a)

(b)


Figure 21. Schematic plot of the Block Renormalization Group (BRG) method as block transformation procedure where $h$ and $J$ label on-orbital and nearest neighbor interaction, respectively a), and as a tree-network b).

### 4.3 Methods based on block transformation procedures

4.3.1 Block renormalization group method (BRG). One of the first attempts to approximate the full configuration Hilbert space $\Lambda^{(d)}=\underset{i=1}{\otimes} \Lambda_{i}\left(\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{i}=q\right)$ of a $d$-orbital system goes back to the late 1960s when Kadanoff invented the Block Spin Renormalization Group method and applied it to the twodimensional Ising model. ${ }^{[236]}$ This was later extended to quantum systems in one dimension called block renormalization group (BRG) method. ${ }^{[237,238]}$ The main idea of the method is to group $d_{s}$ number of orbitals into blocks. The total Hamiltonian is then written as a sum of terms corresponding to the interactions within the blocks (intrablock Hamiltonian) and terms corresponding to the interactions between the blocks (interblock Hamiltonian). The unitary matrix $\mathbf{O}$ introduced in section 4.1.3 is formed from the $q$ lowest eigenstates of the intrablock Hamiltonian and operators are transformed to a new basis using eq. (147). Using the transformed operators, the interblock Hamiltonian can also be expressed. Truncating the Hilbert space of the blocks and keeping only $q$ states per block ensures that one can rescale the interaction strengths (flow equations) and thus the original form of the Hamiltonian is retained. In the next iteration step, the $d_{s}$-blocks are collected. The schematic plot of the procedure is shown in Figure 21a. The procedure is repeated until subsequent iterations do not change the interaction strengths, i.e., until the so-called fixed point of the RG transformation is reached when measurable quantities corresponding to the $d \rightarrow \infty$ limit can be calculated. While this method gave reasonably good results for some onedimensional models with local interactions, using such systematic change of basis and truncation led to loss of information in each iteration step and the accumulation of the error hindered the application of the method for more complex problems. In case of systems with finite number of orbitals this block transformation procedure can also be carried out until all orbitals are included in a single block and the approximated ground state energy can be calculated. This corresponds to the root for the Hierarchial Tucker format discussed in section 3.6. Due to the dramatic truncation of
the states and nonlocal interactions this procedure cannot be applied efficiently in quantum chemistry. However, the BRG method also serves the basis of hierarchal tensor representation and TTNS ansatz discussed in section 4.3.4. Recently, extension of the method known as the MERA ${ }^{[39]}$ gave a new impetus to its application for strongly correlated systems.
4.3.2 Numerical renormalization group method (NRG). Another variant of the RG method, known as the numerical renormalization group (NRG) method shown in Figure 22 is due to Wilson. ${ }^{[239]}$ In the NRG-related Hamiltonian, an impurity interacts with a local fermion. The dynamics of this fermion is described by a semi-infinite one dimensional network, also know as the Wilson chain. The impurity sits on the left side and electrons can move along the chain with an exponentially decreasing hopping amplitude $\lambda^{-j / 2}$. Therefore, each orbital represents a different energy scale. Starting with the very left orbital, new blocks including / orbitals are formed by adding orbitals systematically to the block, i.e., $\Xi^{(\mathrm{L})}=\Xi^{(1)} \otimes \Lambda_{l+1}$ where in the first step $\Xi^{(1)}=\Lambda_{1}$. In each iteration step, the block Hamiltonian is solved and the unitary transformation matrix $\mathbf{O}$ is formed from eigenstates corresponding to the lowest $M$ eigenvalues. The block Hamiltonian is rescaled based on the decay rate of the hopping and the intrablock Hamiltonian is determined on the new basis. Another major difference compared to the BRG method is that in NRG $q<M \ll q^{d}$ states are kept, thus the original form of the Hamilton is lost. Due to the appearance of new operators during the iteration scheme flow equations described above cannot be studied. The change in the energy spectrum, however, can be analyzed and once subsequent iterations leave the spectrum unchanged the fix point is reached. This approach works well due to the separation of energy scales. A problem, however, arises for lattice models when $\lambda \rightarrow 1$ and error starts to accumulate significantly for increasing block size. This hindered the application of NRG to large lattice models. Quite recently, an extension of the method using a similar blocking structure as in DMRG has led to the development of the so called density matrix numerical renormalization group (DM-NRG) which allows us to study more complex problems. ${ }^{[141,240-243]}$


Figure 22. Schematic plot of the Numerical Renormalization Group (NRG) method a block-decimization procedure b) leading to a tree-network a). Hamiltonian on the Wilson chain of length d: the hopping is decreasing exponentially c). A complete basis of a Wilson chain represented as the exponentially increasing number of energy levels belonging to the successive iterations. Continuous/dashed lines represent kept, low-energy/discarded, high-energy levels, respectively. For the consecutive iteration steps, the distances between the levels illustrates how the energy resolution of NRG gets exponentially refined d).
4.3.3 DMRG method. In order to circumvent problems discussed for BRG and NRG, in the two-site variant of the DMRG method ${ }^{[119]} \Lambda^{(d)}$ is approximated by a tensor product space of four tensor spaces, i.e., $\Xi_{\text {DMRG }}^{(d)}=\Xi^{(1)} \otimes \Lambda_{l+1} \otimes \Lambda_{/+2} \otimes \Xi^{(r)}$. This is called superblock and the basis states of the blocks are optimized by successive application of the SVD as discussed in sections Matrix product states or the TT format and SVD and entanglement. Here we use the convenient notations that the whole system, consisting of $d$ orbitals $1,2, \ldots d$, is partitioned into blocks (subsystems), for which we use the labels $(\mathrm{L}),(\mathrm{I}),(\mathrm{R})$ and (r). (I) simply means the block composed of the first $I$ orbitals, that is, $(I)=\{1,2, \ldots, I\}$. An extended block composed of the first $I+1$ orbitals is denoted as $(\mathrm{L})=\{1,2, \ldots, I, I+1\}$. The other part of the system is $(R)=\{I+2, I+3, \ldots, d\}$, while $(r)=\{I+3, \ldots, d\}$. The $d$-orbital wavefunction is, therefore, written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\Psi_{\text {DMRG }}\right\rangle & =\sum_{m_{(I)}^{\alpha_{l+1} \alpha_{l+2} m_{(r)}}} U_{\text {DMRG }}\left(m_{(I)}, \alpha_{I+1}, \alpha_{I+2}, m_{(r)}\right)  \tag{173}\\
& \times\left|\xi_{m_{(I)}}^{(I)}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l+1}}^{\{I+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l+2}}^{\{I+2\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\xi_{m_{(r)}}^{(\mathrm{r})}\right\rangle
\end{align*}
$$

where the tensor $U_{\text {DMRG }}$ is determined by an iterative diagonalization of the corresponding so called superblock Hamiltonian. The dimensions of the spaces of the local left block including $I$ orbitals and the right block with $r=d-I-2$ orbitals are denoted with $M_{I}=\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(1)}$ and $M_{r}=\operatorname{dim} \Lambda^{(r)}$, respectively. Since $\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{l+1}=\operatorname{dim} \Lambda_{l+2}=q$, the resulting dimensionality of the DMRG wave function is $\operatorname{dim} \Xi_{\mathrm{DMRG}}^{(d)}=q^{2} M_{l} M_{r} \ll q^{d}$.

In the original version of the DMRG, introduced to treat finite one-dimensional lattice models, ${ }^{[119]}$ the Hilbert space of a lattice
with $d$ sites is built iteratively starting with four sites as shown in Figure 23. In each iteration step, the Hilbert space $\Xi^{(L)}$ of an enlarged block (I) is formed from the tensor product of the Hilbert spaces of the block $\Xi^{(1)}$ and the adjacent site $\Lambda_{l+1}$ - similarly $\Xi^{(R)}$ from $\Lambda_{l+2}$ and $\Xi^{(r)}$ - and transformed to a new truncated basis by using a unitary operation based on SVD as discussed in section 4.2.1. Therefore, in each iteration step the size of the effective system is increased by two until the desired length $d$ is achieved. This procedure is called infinite-lattice procedure. In the following steps, the $d$-site system is partitioned


Figure 23. Decomposition of the $d$-orbital Hilbert space into four subsystems called superblock. The $d$-orbital Hilbert space is built iteratively from a left block including I active orbitals and the right block from $r$ active orbitals. The size of the two blocks is increased in each iteration step until $l+2+r=d$. In the following steps the $d$-orbital system is partitioned asymmetrically, i.e. the size of left block is increased systematically while the size of the right block is decreased until $I=d-3$ and $r=1$. The same procedure is repeated in the opposite direction until $I=1$ and $r=d-3$. This procedure is called sweeping (macroiteration step).
asymmetrically, i.e. the size of left block is increased systematically while the size of the right block is decreased until $I=d-3$ and $r=1$. In each iteration step, the approximated Hilbert space of the left block (called system block) is improved as it interacts with the right block (called environment). The same procedure is repeated in the opposite direction until $I=1$ and $r=d-3$ when the left block becomes the environment block and the right block the system block. This procedure is called sweeping (macroiteration) and it is a part of the so called finite-lattice method. For more detailed derivations, we refer to the original papers and review articles. ${ }^{[20,119,120]}$

In analogy, in the infinite-lattice procedure one can say that the $d$-orbital Hilbert space is built iteratively by forming $l$ orbital and $r$-orbital blocks from the one-orbital Hilbert spaces starting with an "active space" including only four orbitals. In each iteration step the number of active orbitals is increased by two until all the $d$ orbitals become active, i.e., part of either the left or right block. This procedure serves as the initialization of the MPS network with $d$ component tensors. When the network is formed, the elements of the $A_{i}$ matrices are random numbers. The infinite lattice method can be viewed as a procedure to start with four "active" component tenors by setting the remaining $d-4$ component tensors to trivial. This means that the $m_{i-1}$ and $m_{i}$ indices of the corresponding $A_{i}\left(m_{i-1}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i}\right)$ takes only the value 1 , and $A_{i}\left(1, \alpha_{i}, 1\right)=\delta_{1, \alpha_{i}}$ that is, $A_{i}(1,1,1)=1$ and the others are 0 . In each iteration step, the number of "active" component tensors is increased by two until no component tensors are set to trivial.

In quantum chemistry, it is more efficient to start with an initial network which already corresponds to the finite system with $d$ orbitals as has been introduced through the Dynamically Extended Active Space (DEAS) procedure. ${ }^{[25]}$ In the DEAS procedure, one starts with a superblock structure with $I=1$ and $r=d-3$, as is shown in Figure 25, and carries out the forward and backward sweeping procedure, i.e., the finite lattice method as described above. A crucial problem, however, is that during the first sweep when the left block is optimized the right block Hilbert space has to be approximated with $M_{r}$ $\ll q^{r}$ basis states. An efficient method to carry out such optimization will be discussed in section 4.4 .7 based on the Cl procedure.

Let us highlight the main aspect of DMRG procedure once again: If one could represent the Hilbert spaces of the four subsystems used in the two-site DMRG exactly using oneorbital basis states, then in the first step of the DEAS procedure this would mean $M_{l}=q$ and $M_{r}=q^{d-3}$ and $\Lambda_{\text {DMRG }}^{(d)}=$ $\Lambda^{(1)} \otimes \Lambda_{I+1} \otimes \Lambda_{I+2} \otimes \Lambda^{(r)}$. By traversing through the system back-and-forth the left and right block Hilbert spaces are transformed and truncated, and after a full sweep the approximated subspace is given as $\Xi_{\mathrm{DMRG}}^{(d)}=\Xi^{(1)} \otimes \Lambda_{I+1} \otimes \Lambda_{I+2} \otimes \Xi^{(\mathrm{r})}$. Therefore, the $d$-orbital wavefunction written in terms of oneorbital basis is converted to an approximated multiorbital basis in $\Xi_{\text {DMRG }}^{(d)}=\Xi^{(l)} \otimes \Lambda_{/+1} \otimes \Lambda_{/+2} \otimes \Xi^{(r)}$, where $\operatorname{dim} \Xi_{\text {DMRG }}^{(d)} \ll \operatorname{dim}$ $\Lambda^{(d)}$ depending on the level of truncation.

A main difference compared to the BRG and NRG methods is how the transformation matrix $\mathbf{O}$ is constructed. In a given iteration step (see Figure 24), the (I)• composite system is


Figure 24. Schematic plot of a DMRG iteration step in order to increase block sizes and form a bipartite representation for the singular value decomposition. (I) and (r) denote the left and right block of length $/$ and $r$, and of dimension $M_{l}$ and $M_{r}$ respectively, $\cdot$ stands for the intermediate orbitals $(\{I+1\}$ and $\{I+2\})$ with dimension $q$. The blocks $(\mathrm{L})=(\mathrm{I}) \cdot(\mathrm{R})=\bullet(\mathrm{r})$ have dimension $M_{L}$ and $M_{R}$, respectively.
combined to one subsystem (I) with $\Xi^{(\mathrm{L})}=\Xi^{(\mathrm{I})} \otimes \Lambda_{l+1}$ and $\cdot(\mathrm{r})$ to another one (r) with $\Xi^{(\mathrm{R})}=\Lambda_{l+2} \otimes \Xi^{(r)}$. This leads to $\Xi^{(\mathrm{L})}$ $\otimes \boldsymbol{\Xi}^{(R)}=\Xi_{\text {DMRG }}^{(d)} \subseteq \Lambda^{(d)}$ and the bipartite representation of the wavefunction is formed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Psi_{\mathrm{DMRG}}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{(\mathrm{L})} m_{(\mathrm{R})}} U_{\mathrm{DMRG}}\left(m_{(\mathrm{L})}, m_{(\mathrm{R})}\right)\left|\phi_{m_{(L)}}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{m_{(\mathrm{R})}}^{(\mathrm{R})}\right\rangle \tag{174}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to section 4.2.1, using SVD it can be written as a single sum of tensor products. The new basis states $\left|\xi_{m_{(L)}}^{(L)}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\xi_{m_{(R)}}^{(\mathrm{R})}\right\rangle$ given in eq. (154) are obtained by diagonalizing the reduced subsystem density matrices $\rho^{(\mathrm{L})}$ and $\rho^{(\mathrm{R})}$, see eq. (156). The transformation matrix $\mathbf{O}$ introduced in section 4.1.3 is formed from eigenstates $\left|\xi_{m_{(L)}}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right\rangle$ (or $\left|\xi_{m_{(R)}}^{(\mathrm{R})}\right\rangle$ ) corresponding to the $M_{l}^{\text {kept }} \leq M_{I} q$ (or $M_{r}^{\text {kept }} \leq M_{r} q$ ) largest eigenvalues $\omega_{m}$. Due to the truncation of basis states, the so-called truncation error is defined as the sum of the truncated number of eigenvalues of the reduced subsystem density matrix deviates from unity, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \varepsilon_{T \mathrm{R}}=1-\sum_{m=1}^{M_{\mathrm{kept}}} \omega_{m} \tag{175}
\end{equation*}
$$

Operators of the enlarged blocks are transformed to this new basis as $\left(\mathbf{X}_{i} \mathbf{Y}_{I+1}\right)^{(I+1)}=\mathbf{O}\left(\mathbf{X}_{i}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{Y}_{I+1}^{\{I+1\}}\right) \mathbf{O}^{\dagger}$, where $\mathbf{X}_{i}$ and $\mathbf{Y}_{I+1}$ are $M_{I} \times M_{I}$ and $q \times q$ matrices, respectively. The number of block states, $M_{I}$ and $M_{r}$ required to achieve sufficient convergence can be regarded as a function of the level of entanglement among the MOs. Hence the maximum number of block states $M_{\max }=\max \left(M_{l}, M_{r}\right)$ determines the accuracy of a DMRG calculation ${ }^{[20,25]}$ as will be investigated in the next section.

If the transformation matrix $\mathbf{O}$ in each iteration step is reindexed according to the procedure explained in section 4.1.3 and the corresponding $\mathbf{B}$ matrices are stored within a full sweep then the DMRG wavefunction for a given superblock partitioning can be written in MPS form ${ }^{[18,19,34]}$ as

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left|\Psi_{\text {DMRG }}\right\rangle=\sum_{m_{(1)} \alpha_{l+1} \alpha_{l+2} m_{(r)}} U_{\text {DMRG }}\left(m_{(l)}, \alpha_{l+1}, \alpha_{l+2}, m_{(r)}\right) \\
\times\left(\mathbf{B}_{l}\left(\alpha_{l}\right) \ldots \mathbf{B}_{2}\left(\alpha_{2}\right)\right)_{m_{(1)} ; \alpha_{1}}\left(\mathbf{B}_{l+3}\left(\alpha_{l+3}\right) \ldots \mathbf{B}_{d-1}\left(\alpha_{d-1}\right)\right)_{m_{(r)} ; \alpha_{d}}  \tag{176}\\
\quad \times\left|\phi_{\alpha_{1}}^{\{1\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l+1}}^{\{l+1\}}\right\rangle \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{l+2}}^{\{l+2\}}\right\rangle \otimes \ldots \otimes\left|\phi_{\alpha_{d}}^{\{d\}}\right\rangle .
\end{gather*}
$$



Figure 25. A modified initialization of the tensor network with $d$ orbitals used in the Dynamically Extended Active Space (DEAS) procedure. In the DEAS procedure, one starts with a superblock structure with $I=1$ and $r$ $=d-3$ and use an approximated Hilbert space with dimension $M_{r} \ll q^{r}$.

Therefore, DMRG can be viewed as an efficient method to generate the optimized set of $\mathbf{A}_{i}\left(\mathbf{B}_{i}\right)$ matrices used to construct the MPS representation of the $d$-orbital wavefunction. Since in this representation, the $d$-orbital wavefunction is written as a linear combination of the tensor product of the oneorbital basis (Cl coefficients), it allows one to connect the DMRG wavefunction to conventional quantum chemical techniques. For example, the Cl coefficients of the most relevant terms can be determined. ${ }^{[77]}$
Concluding this section, different one-dimensional representation of tensor network state algorithms, i.e, matrix product state methods have been developped in the various communities. In this one-dimensional optimization scheme, the network is built from matrices. The TT and MPS approaches are "wavefunction" oriented description of the problem while DMRG is more like an "operator" representation of the prob-
lem. In the TT and MPS, the physical indices are for local $q$ dimensional tensor spaces thus operators are $q \times q$ matrices but the $\mathbf{A}(\alpha)$ matrices must be stored. The norm is calculated by simply connecting the physical indices vertically. In contrast to this, in the DMRG description when the network is separated to a left and a right part, the operators of the left and right part are represented on a multiorbital tensor space of dimension $M_{l}$ and $M_{r}$ respectively, where both are much larger than $q$. Therefore the corresponding matrices of dimensions $M_{l}$ $\times M_{l}$ and $M_{r} \times M_{r}$ must be stored during the iterative minimization procedure. In the quantum chemistry framework, longrange Coulomb interactions are given by the fourth-order tensor $V_{i j k l}$ of equation (44b)) thus the number of renormalized operators scales as $\mathcal{O}\left(d^{4}\right)$. Using, however, an efficient factorization of the interaction terms distributed among the various subsystems, ${ }^{[244]}$ this scaling can be reduced to $\mathcal{O}\left(d^{2}\right)$, see in section 4.3.5. Therefore, the required memory to store operators in a given QC-DMRG iteration step assuming $M_{l}=M_{r} \equiv M$ is $\mathcal{O}\left(M^{2} d^{2}\right)$. The computational cost of a given QC-DMRG step scales as $\mathcal{O}\left(M^{3} d^{2}\right)$ and for a full sweep $\mathcal{O}\left(M^{3} d^{3}\right)$. A main advantage of the DMRG method is, however, that in each iteration step the core tensor is optimized so orthogonalization of the left and right block states are guaranteed ${ }^{[20]}$.
4.3.4 Higher dimensional network: TTNS. A natural extension of the MPS approach is to form an ansatz state by contracting a network of higher order tensors, ${ }^{[31-38,42-44,117]}$ as discussed in section 3. A special class of such ansatz states are the TTNS ${ }^{[98-100,245]}$ which are formed by contracting tensors according to a tree network, as shown in Figure 26. The structure of the tree network can be arbitrary and the coordination number can vary from site to site. Each tensor in the network represents a physical orbital and is of order $z_{i}+1$, were $z_{i}$ describing the coordination number of site $i$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}, m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}\right) \tag{177}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $z_{i}$ virtual indices $m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}$ are of dimension $M$ and are contracted as the TTNS is formed. The physical index $\alpha_{i}$ is of dimension $q$ and describes the physical state of the orbital, e.g., the number of up- and down-electrons on that orbital.
(a)

$$
|\Psi\rangle \cong
$$


(b)


Figure 26. Schematic plot of a higher dimensional network, for example, the tree tensor network state (TTNS). Each node is represented by a tensor $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ of order $z_{i}+1$, with $z_{i}$ is an orbital dependent coordination number. The network supposed to reflect the entanglement structure of the molecule as much as possible. The vertical lines are the physical indices $\alpha_{i}, i \in\{1, d\}$, while the others that connect the orbitals are virtual ones.


Figure 27. Concept of the variational optimization of tensor network states: a) tensor network state $|\Psi\rangle$ separated into two parts: the tensor $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ that is supposed to be optimized and an environment tensor $\mathcal{E}_{i}$ that is formed by contracting all tensors except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$. b) norm $\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle$ of the tensor network state defined in a); the norm equals to $\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} \mathbf{N}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$ with $\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$ corresponding to the $q M^{z_{i}}$-dimensional vector obtained by joining all indices of tensor $\mathbf{A}_{i}$, and $\mathbf{N}_{i}$ represents the effective environment, drawn with dashed lines. c) expectation value $\langle\Psi| H|\Psi\rangle$ of $H$ with respect to the tensor network state defined in a); the expectation value equals to $\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} \mathbf{H}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$ with $\mathbf{H}_{i}$ representing the effective Hamiltonian, drawn with dashed lines.

The TTNS is especially suitable to treat models in which orbitals have varying degrees of entanglement (see Figures 17 and 18): since entanglement is transferred via the virtual bonds that connect the sites, sites with a larger coordination number are better suited to represent higher entanglement. In this way, the coordination number can be adapted according to the entanglement of the orbitals, and the orbitals can be arranged on the tree such that highly entangled orbitals are close together (see later in section 4.4.5).
An additional motivation for using a tree structure is to take advantage of the property of the tree tensor network ansatz that the long-range correlations differ from the mean-field value polynomially with distance rather than exponentially as for MPS. ${ }^{[98]}$ This is due to the fact that the number of virtual bonds required to connect two arbitrary orbitals scales logarithmically with the number of orbitals $d$ for $z>2$, as can be seen by considering a Cayley-tree of depth $\Delta$ : the number of sites in the tree is

$$
\begin{equation*}
d=1+z \sum_{j=1}^{\Delta}(z-1)^{j-1}=\frac{z(z-1)^{\Delta}-2}{z-2} \tag{178}
\end{equation*}
$$

and thus, the maximal distance between two orbitals, $2 \Delta$, scales logarithmically with $d$ for $z>2$. On the other hand, for $z=2$ the number of virtual bonds required to connect two arbitrary orbitals scales linearly in $d$.

In the algorithmic approach to optimize the TTNS, one can use tools known in literature ${ }^{[40,245-247]}$ and optimize the network site-by-site as in the DMRG. The fact that the tree tensor network does not contain any loops allows an exact mathematical treatment ${ }^{[43,117]}$ (see in section 3.2). For $z=2$, the DMRG algorithm is recovered. The TTNS algorithm is similar to a DMRG calculation with $z$ blocks instead of two, where a block consists of all of the sites within one of the branches emerging from site $i$ (see Figure 28a).

As in DMRG, the TTNS algorithm consists in the variational optimization of the tensors $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ in such a way that the energy is minimized (with the constraint that the norm of the state remains constant). This is equivalent to minimizing the functional

$$
\begin{equation*}
F=\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle-E(\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle-1), \tag{179}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $|\Psi\rangle=\left|\Psi\left(\mathbf{A}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{A}_{d}\right)\right\rangle$. This functional is nonconvex with respect to all parameters $\left\{\mathbf{A}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{A}_{d}\right\}$. However, by fixing all tensors $\mathbf{A}_{k}$ except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$, due to the tensor network structure of the ansatz, it is quadratic in the parameters $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ associated with one lattice site $i$.

As depicted in Figure 27a, the tensor network state can be separated in two parts: the tensor $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ that is supposed to be optimized and an environment tensor $\mathcal{E}_{i}$ that is formed by contracting all tensors except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$. $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ is connected to the environment tensor $\mathcal{E}_{i}$ by $z_{i}$ virtual bonds, with $z_{i}$ being the coordination number of site $i$. Using this sepparation, it is evident that $\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} \mathbf{N}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$ and $\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle=\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} \mathbf{H}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$, as shown in Figures 27b and 27c. $\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$ is thereby the reshaped $q \times M \times \cdots \times M$-tensor $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ into a $q M^{z_{i}}$-dimensional vector. The inhomogenity $\mathbf{N}_{i}$ and the effective Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_{i}$ with respect to site $i$ are matrices of size $q M^{z_{i}} \times q M^{z_{i}}$ that are obtained by contracting all tensors except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ in the tensor expressions for $\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle$ and $\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle$, respectively (see Figures 27b and 27c).

The optimal parameters $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ can be found by minimizing the quadratic function

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}\right)=\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}^{+} \mathbf{H}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}-E\left(\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}^{+} \mathbf{N}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}-1\right) \tag{180}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equivalent to solving the generalized eigenvalue problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}=E \mathbf{N}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} . \tag{181}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 28. a) norm $\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle$ of the TTNS defined in Figure 26; the tensor network picture of the norm corresponds to a two-layer structure, with the ket $|\Psi\rangle$ being on top and the bra $\langle\Psi|$ on bottom. For better readability, the contracted physical indices are drawn with dashed lines. b) gauge transformation in a tensor network state: the state remains invariant if matrices $G$ and $G^{-1}$ are inserted at one bond and merged with the adjacent tensors. c) Orthonormalization condition imposed on all tensors (blue) except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ (green). d) Norm of the TTNS with all tensors except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ fulfilling the orthonormalization condition.

For a network without loops, it is always possible to set $\mathbf{N}_{i}$ equal to the identity, which accounts for numerical stability because the generalized eigenvalue problem reduces to an ordinary one. The reason for this possibility is the gauge degree of freedom that exists in tensor networks: without changing the state, matrices $G$ and $G^{-1}$ can always be inserted at a bond and merged with the adjacent tensors, as depicted in Figure 28b. Because of this gauge degree of freedom, each tensor $\mathbf{A}_{j}$ for $j \neq i$ can be enforced to fulfill the orthonormalization condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\overrightarrow{m_{\text {in }}}} A_{j}\left(\alpha_{j}, \vec{m}_{\text {in }}, m_{\text {out }}\right) A_{j}\left(\alpha_{j}, \vec{m}_{\text {in }}, m_{\text {out }}^{\prime}\right)=\delta_{m_{\text {out }} m_{\text {out }}^{\prime}} \tag{182}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the "out"-index $m_{\text {out }}$ is the index pointing towards site $i$, the remaining indices are denoted "in"-indices $\vec{m}_{\text {in }}$. In pictorial form, this condition is illustrated in Figure 28c. The mathematical operation that endows tensors with the orthonormalization condition is the $Q R$-decomposition which is numerically stable. ${ }^{[98]}$ Due to the orthonormalization condition, the tensor network for the norm of the TTNS, as shown in Figure 28a, can be "cropped" from the leaves towards site $i$, until only the tensors $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{A}_{i}}$ at site $i$ remain. The norm of the TTNS then simplifies to $\langle\Psi \mid \Psi\rangle=\overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{A}}_{i}$, which makes $\mathbf{N}_{i}=1$ (see Figure 28d).

The challenge that remains is to calculate the effective Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_{i}$ of the eigenvalue problem. As mentioned before, it is obtained by contracting all tensors except $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{A}_{i}}$ in the tensor network of $\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle$. In case of a TTNS, the contraction is efficient if the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ is present in the form of a tree
tensor network, as well. The tree network of the Hamiltonian shall have the same structure as the tree network of the state. In analogy to the definition of the TTNS, a tensor

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{i}\left(\alpha_{i}^{\prime}, \alpha_{i}, m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}\right) \tag{183}
\end{equation*}
$$

is associated to each site $i$ with physical indices $\alpha_{i}^{\prime}$ and $\alpha_{i}$ and virtual indices $m_{i, 1}, \ldots, m_{i, z_{i}}$. The coefficients $\mathbf{H}\left(\alpha_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}^{\prime}, \alpha_{1}\right.$, $\left.\ldots, \alpha_{d}\right)$ are then obtained by contracting the virtual indices of the tensors $\mathbf{h}_{i}$ according to the tree network. For $z=2$, this corresponds to the representation of the Hamiltonian as a Matrix Product Operator (MPO), as depicted in Figure 29b1. For $z>2$, this concept is generalized to a Tree Tensor Network Operator (TTNO), which is illustrated in Figure 29b2. In fact, for local Hamiltonians it is always possible to find a representation as an MPO or TTNO with constant dimension of the virtual bonds. ${ }^{[248]}$ For nonlocal Hamiltonians of the form (43), as arising in quantum chemistry, it is always possible to find an MPO- or TTNO-form with bond-dimension $\mathcal{O}\left(d^{2}\right)$.

Once the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ is represented as TTNO with the same network structure as the TTNS $|\Psi\rangle$, the tensor network form of the expectation value corresponds to a three-layer object, as depicted in Figure 29a, with the ket $|\Psi\rangle$ consisting of component tensors $\boldsymbol{A}_{i}$ being on top, the bra $\langle\Psi|$ consisting of component tensors $\overline{\mathbf{A}_{i}}$ on bottom, and the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$, represented as TTNO of component tensors $\mathbf{h}_{i}$ in the middle. By starting from the leaves and proceeding inwards towards site $i$, this network can be contracted efficiently (i.e. polynomially in $d$ and $M$ ), yielding the expectation value $\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle$


Figure 29. a) Expectation value $\langle\Psi| \mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle$ with respect to the TTNS defined in Figure 26; the tensor network picture of the expectation value corresponds to a three-layer structure, with the ket $|\Psi\rangle$ consisting of component tensors $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ being on top, the bra $\langle\Psi|$ consisting of component tensors $\overline{\mathbf{A}_{i}}$ on bottom, and the Hamiltonian H, represented as TTNO of component tensors $\mathbf{h}_{i}$ in the middle. For better readability, the contracted physical indices are drawn with dashed lines. b) Decomposition of the Hamiltonian as MPO (b1) and TTNO (b2).
and, if $\mathbf{A}_{i}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{A}_{i}}$ are omitted, the effective Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_{i}$. In order to reduce computational costs related to the diagonalization of the effective Hamiltonian a half-renormalization scheme has also been introduced. ${ }^{[99]}$

For more detailed derivations we refer to the original papers. ${ }^{[98-100]}$
4.3.5 Efficient factorization of the interaction terms. When the $d$-orbital system is partitioned into several subsystems, the Hamiltonian is built from terms acting within the subsystems and from terms among the subsystems. During the course of the iterative diagonalization of the effective Hamiltonian acting on the $M_{L} M_{R}$ dimensional subspace, the matrix vector multiplication $\mathbf{H}|\Psi\rangle$ is performed several times. ${ }^{[218,219]}$ For a bipartite split using the matricization of $U$ discussed in section $3.4,|\Psi\rangle$ is converted to a matrix with size $M_{L} \times M_{R}$ and the matrix vector multiplication is formed as two matrix-matrix multiplication of operator pairs as $\mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{U}\left(\mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})}\right)^{\top}$ where $\mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})}$ and $\mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})}$ are operators acting on the left and right subsystem, respectively.

In order to treat long-range interactions efficiently, the interaction terms must be factorized, thus the matrix and tensor algebra during the diagonalization procedure is simplified. This is called partial summation. ${ }^{[244]}$ For example, considering a two-orbital interaction in general, like the two-operator term in (43), for a bipartite split of the system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{two}}=\sum_{i, j \in(\mathrm{~L})} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})}+\sum_{\substack{i \in(\mathrm{~L}) \\ j \in(\mathrm{R})}} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})}+\sum_{\substack{i \in(\mathrm{R}) \\ j \in(\mathrm{~L})}} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{R})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})}+\sum_{i, j \in(\mathrm{R})} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{R})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})} \tag{184}
\end{equation*}
$$

one of the coupling between the two subsystems (the second term above) can be simplified as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{j \in(\mathrm{R})}\left(\sum_{i \in(\mathrm{~L})} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right) \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{j \in(\mathrm{R})} \mathcal{A}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})(\cdot)} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{R})} \tag{185}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\mathcal{A}_{j}^{(L)(\cdot)}=\sum_{i \in L} T_{i j} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(L)}$ is called one-orbital auxiliary operator.
Therefore, the number of operator multiplications reduces from $d^{2}$ to $d$. Symbolically, this can be written in a compact form: we assign a label to each subsystem and form the total system by adding together the subsystems. This sum is raised to the power given by the number of operators corresponding to the given interaction. For example, for the four operator term, coming from the Coulomb interaction, $\mathbf{H}_{\text {four }}=\sum_{i j k l} V_{i j k l} \mathbf{X}_{i}$ $\mathbf{Y}_{j} \mathbf{Z}_{k} \mathbf{W}_{l}$ in (43) and for the bipartite split (subsystems (I) and $(r)$, this can be factorized as $((L)+(R))^{4}=(L)^{4}+4(L)^{3}(R)+$ $6(L)^{2}(R)^{2}+4(L)(R)^{3}+(R)^{4}$. Constant factors comes from the permutation of indices and exponents show the number of operators acting within the corresponding subsystem. Therefore, when the first three operators act on the (I) subsystem and the last operator on the $(r)$ subsystem then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{l \in(\mathrm{R})}\left(\sum_{i j, k \in(\mathrm{~L})} V_{i j k l} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Z}_{k}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right) \mathbf{W}_{l}^{(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{l \in(\mathrm{R})} \mathcal{A}_{l}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\cdot)} \mathbf{W}_{l}^{(\mathrm{R})} \tag{186}
\end{equation*}
$$

thus the number of operator multiplications reduces from $d^{4}$ to $d$ by forming a three-orbital auxiliary operator $\mathcal{A}_{j}^{(L)(L)(L)(\cdot)}$.

Similarly, when the first two operators act on the (I) subsystem and the last two operators on the $(r)$ subsystem then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{R})(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{k, l \in(\mathrm{R})}\left(\sum_{i, j \in(\mathrm{~L})} V_{i j k l} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right) \mathbf{Z}_{k}^{(\mathrm{R})} \mathbf{W}_{l}^{(\mathrm{R})}=\sum_{k, l \in(\mathrm{R})} \mathcal{A}_{k l}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\cdot)(\cdot)} \mathbf{Z}_{k}^{(\mathrm{R})} \mathbf{W}_{l}^{(\mathrm{R})} \tag{187}
\end{equation*}
$$

thus the number of operator multiplications reduces from $d^{4}$ to $d^{2}$ by forming two-orbital auxiliary operators $\mathcal{A}_{k l}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\cdot)(\cdot)}$. Extensions for more subsystems used in QC-DMRG and QCTTNS are straightforward. For example, for subsystems $(I),(I+1),(I+2),(r)$, the two-operator term is composed from the following terms as $((I)+(I+1)+(I+2)+(r))^{2}=(I)^{2}+2$ $(I)(I+1)+2(I)(I+2)+2(I)(r)+(I+1)^{2}+2(I+1)(I+2)+2(I+1)(r)+$ $(I+2)^{2}+2(I+2)(r)+(r)^{2}$ and the four-operator term factorizes as $\quad((I)+(I+1)+(I+2)+(r))^{4}=(I)^{4}+4(I)^{3}(I+1)+4(I)^{3}(I+2)+4$ $(I)^{3}(r)+6(I)^{2}(I+1)^{2}+12(I)^{2}(I+1)(I+2)+\ldots$ It is worth to note that symmetries of $V_{i j k l}$ can be used to reduce the number of independent terms.

Renormalization of multiorbital operators, i.e, when more than one operator act in the same subsystem, requires special care since they cannot be calculated accurately as a product of the renormalized operators. For example, if $i, j$ belong to the same DMRG block due to the truncation of the Hilbertspace, $\mathbf{O O}^{+} \neq \square$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{O}\left(\mathbf{X}_{i}^{(L)} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(L)}\right) \mathbf{0}^{\dagger} \neq \mathbf{O} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(L)} \mathbf{O}^{\dagger} \mathbf{O} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(L)} \mathbf{O}^{+} \tag{188}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, multiorbital operators must be renormalized independently and stored. As an example, the renormalization of a four-orbital operator acting on the $(\mathrm{L})=(\mathrm{I}) \cdot$ composite system is $\quad \mathbf{O} \mathcal{A}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{O}^{\dagger}=\mathbf{O}\left(\sum_{i j k l \in(\mathrm{~L})} V_{i j k l} \mathbf{X}_{i}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Y}_{j}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{Z}_{k}^{(\mathrm{L})} \mathbf{W}_{l}^{(\mathrm{L})}\right) \mathbf{O}^{\dagger}$, where the auxiliary operator $\mathcal{A}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})}$ is decomposed into further auxiliary operators as follows

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{A}^{(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})(\mathrm{L})}=\mathcal{A}^{(\mathrm{I})(\mathrm{I})(\mathrm{I}(\mathrm{I})} \otimes \mathbb{a}_{l+1}+\mathcal{A}_{l+1}^{(\mathrm{II}(\mathrm{I})(\mathrm{I})(\cdot)} \otimes \mathbf{W}_{l+1}+\mathcal{A}_{l+1, l+1}^{(\mathrm{I})(\mathrm{I})(\cdot)(\cdot)} \otimes \mathbf{Z}_{l+1} \mathbf{W}_{l+1} \\
& \quad+\mathcal{A}_{l+1}^{(\mathrm{II}(\cdot)(\cdot)(\cdot)} \otimes \mathbf{Y}_{I+1} \mathbf{Z}_{l+1} \mathbf{W}_{l+1}+\square^{(\mathrm{I})} \otimes V_{l+1, l+1, l+1, l+1} \mathbf{X}_{l+1} \mathbf{Y}_{l+1} \mathbf{Z}_{l+1} \mathbf{W}_{l+1} \tag{189}
\end{align*}
$$

In summary, the numerical effort of the QC-DMRG and QCTTNS algorithms has two major contributions. On the one hand, the number of block states is crucial: The numerical effort for calculating one term of the effective Hamiltonian by tensor contraction scales as $M^{z+1}$ for trees of arbitrary coordination number $z$. On the other hand, this calculation has to be performed for each term in the Hamiltonian, and using the summation tricks as described above the scaling is $d^{2} M^{z+1}$. Since $\mathcal{O}(d)$ iteration steps are required for convergence, the overall time of the algorithms scale as $d^{3} M^{z+1}$.

### 4.4 Optimization of convergence properties

In order to use QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS as black box methods, it is mandatory to utilize various concepts inherited from quantum information theory. ${ }^{[11,25,55,61,95,98,100]}$ In this section, we briefly discuss some entanglement-based optimization pro-
cedures which are used to minimize the overall entanglement, expressed as a cost function, ${ }^{[11,61]}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{\text {overall }}=\sum_{i, j} I_{i j} d_{i j}^{\eta} \tag{190}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $d_{i j}$ is the distance function between orbital $i$ and $j$, in the graph-theoretical sense, $l_{i j}$ is the two-orbital mutual information given in (164) and $\eta$ is some exponent. Therefore, the correlations between the pairs of orbitals are weighted by the distance $d_{i j}$. The distance $d_{i j}$ depends on the tensor topology, and it is defined as the length of the shortest path connecting $i$ and $j$ in the tensor network. In the special case of MPS, the distance is simply $d_{i j}=|i-j|$.

The physical motivation behind the quantity $I_{\text {overall }}$ is that in a given iteration step the Schmidt rank is related to the number and strength of the entanglement bonds between the left and right blocks, thus if two highly correlated orbitals are located far from each other then they give a large contribution until they fall into the same block. Since the overall cost is related to the sum of the Schmidt ranks, the major aim is to reduce the ranks for each iteration steps. The optimization methods surveyed in this section serve for the manipulation of this cost function $I_{\text {overall }}$ in three different ways: by changing $d_{i j}$ by reordering the component tensors for a given tensor topology (section 4.4.4); by changing $d_{i j}$ by altering the tensor topology itself (section 4.4.5); or by changing $l_{i j}$ by transforming the orbital basis (section 4.4.6). Besides this, there are other factors which effects the convergence rate and computational time: using dynamical block state selection (DBSS) methods (section 4.4.3); using entanglement based network initialization (section 4.4.7); or reducing the Hilbert space by taking symmetries into consideration (section 4.4.8).
4.4.1 Error sources and data sparse representation of the wavefunction. As has been discussed before, the success and numerical efficiency of the QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS algorithm rely on a subsequent application of the SVD ${ }^{[21,43,98,99]}$ (section 4.2.1) while the performance depends on the level of entanglement encoded in the wave function. ${ }^{[23,25]}$ In each DMRG (or TTNS) step, the basis states of the system block are then transformed to a new truncated basis set by a unitary transformation based on the preceding SVD. ${ }^{[20]}$ This transformation depends therefore on how accurately the environment is represented ${ }^{[59,249]}$ as well as on the level of truncation. ${ }^{[24]}$ As a consequence, the accuracy of the DMRG method is governed by the truncation error, $\delta_{\varepsilon_{T R}}$, as well as by the environmental error, $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {sweep. }}{ }^{[249]}$ The latter is minimized in each DMRG sweep (macroiteration) by a successive application of the SVD going through the system back and forth. Since dim $\left(\Xi_{\mathrm{DMRG}}\right) \ll \operatorname{dim}\left(\Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}\right)$ DMRG provides a data-sparse representation of the wavefunction, thus the sparsity can be defined as $\operatorname{dim}\left(\Xi_{\text {DMRG }}\right) / \operatorname{dim}\left(\Lambda_{\mathrm{FCI}}\right)$ for a given error margin.

As an example, relevant quantities as a function of DMRG iteration steps are shown in Figure 30 for LiF at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. for two different tensor arrangements (ordering). Since DMRG is a variational method, it converges to the full-Cl energy from above as is apparent in the top panels of Figure


Figure 30. Ground state energy $(E)$ in a.u., relative error $\left(\Delta E_{\mathrm{rel}}=\left(E_{\mathrm{DMRG}}-E_{\mathrm{FCI}}\right) / E_{\mathrm{FCI}}\right)$, number of block states $\left(M_{l}, M_{r}\right)$, truncation error $\delta \varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}}$, dimension of the superblock Hilbert space ( $\Xi_{\text {DMRG }}$ ), are shown as a function of DMRG iteration steps for LiF at $d_{\text {Li-F }}=3.05$ a.u. with CAS $(6,12)$ with fixed $M_{l}=M_{r}=16$ for a nonoptimized tensor hierarchy (ordering) a) and for an optimized tensor tensor hierarchy (ordering) b).
30. Close to the turning points when either left or right block contains a single orbital $M_{l}$ or $M_{r}$ drops to $4=q$. Although the truncation error fluctuates between $10^{-16}$ and $10^{-6}$ for both tensor arrangements (ordering) and the size of the superblock Hilbert space is at most 400, a much lower energy has been reached with the optimized ordering. This clearly shows that in order to minimize $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {sweep }}$ and avoid DMRG to converge to a local minima besides sweeping the tensor arrangement must also be optimized as will be discussed below.
(b)


Using an optimized ordering the convergence of the ground state energy for LiF at $d_{\text {Li-F }}=3.05$ a.u. as a function of DMRG sweepings for various fixed number of block states is shown in Figure 31a. Taking the limit of zero energy change between two sweeps $E\left(M, \delta \varepsilon_{\text {sweep }}=0\right)$ for a given $M$ and assuming $M_{l}=M_{r}=M$ various extrapolation schemes as a function of $M$ have been introduced ${ }^{[24,49,52,74,250]}$ in order to provide a good estimate for the truncation-free solution. A more rigorous extrapolation scheme is based on the truncation error, ${ }^{[249]}$ i.e.,
(c)

(d)


Figure 31. Convergence of the ground state energy for LiF at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05 \mathrm{a} . \mathrm{u}$. as a function of DMRG sweeping for various fixed number of block states a), $E\left(M, \delta \varepsilon_{\text {sweep }}=0\right)$ as a function of $\left.1 / M b\right)$, ground state energy as a function of DMRG sweeping for various fixed $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$ using DBSS procedure c), and $\Delta E_{\text {rel }}(\delta$ $\left.\varepsilon_{\text {TR }}, \delta \varepsilon_{\text {sweep }}=0\right)$ as a function of $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$ on a log-log scale d). The solid lines are our fits.


Figure 32. a) Similar to Figure 30b but for LiF at $d_{\text {Li-F }}=3.05$ a.u. with $\operatorname{CAS}(6,25)$ and targeting the ground state and excited states within a single DMRG calculation with $M_{I}=M_{r}=64$ block states, for optimized tensor hierarchy (ordering). b) Similar to a) but using the DBSS procedure with $M_{\text {min }}=64$ and $\chi=10^{-7}$.
once the environmental error is eliminated, the relative error, $\Delta E_{\text {rel }}=\left(E_{\mathrm{DMRG}}-E_{\mathrm{FCI}}\right) / E_{\mathrm{FCI}}$, is determined by $\delta \varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ln \Delta E_{\mathrm{rel}}=a \ln \delta \varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}}+b . \tag{191}
\end{equation*}
$$

When the number of block states are kept fixed, the truncation error fluctuates within a full sweep (see Figure 30) thus the largest truncation error within a full sweep determines the overall accuracy. In Figure 31d, the relative error of the ground state energy is shown as a function of the largest truncation error within the last full sweep on a log-log scale. The linear behavior allows one to obtain the truncation-free energy by taking all the datapoints obtained up to a given $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$ and letting $E_{\mathrm{FCI}}$ as a free parameter denoted as $E$.
4.4.2 Targeting several states together. As it is possible to calculate several lowest lying eigenstates of the superblock Hamiltonian using the Davidson ${ }^{[219]}$ or Lánczos ${ }^{[218]}$ algorithm, more eigenstates can be targeted within a single QC-DMRG or QCTTNS calculation. ${ }^{[15,24,51,58,63,68,87,90,93,100]}$

In this case, the total system is no longer treated as a pure state but as a mixed state with mixing weights $p_{\gamma}>0$ (with $\gamma$ $=1, \ldots, n$ and $\sum_{\gamma} p_{\gamma}=1$ ), the reduced subsystem density matrix can be formed from the reduced density matrices $\rho_{\gamma}$ of the lowest $n$ eigenstates $\left|\Psi_{\gamma}\right\rangle$ as $\rho=\sum_{\gamma} p_{\gamma} \rho_{\gamma}$. The optimal choice of the $p_{\gamma}$ distribution, however, is not established yet. As an example, energies of the ground state and first excited state obtained for the LiF at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. is shown in Figure 32a. It is worth mentioning that target states can also be formed based on the action of a given operator, i.e., besides the ground and excited states
one can include states by applying a given operator to the ground state. For more details, we refer to the literature. ${ }^{[124]}$

For multitarget states with equal weights $p_{\gamma} \equiv p=1 / n$, we minimize the sum $\sum_{\gamma=1}^{n}\left\langle\Psi_{\gamma}\right| H\left|\Psi_{\gamma}\right\rangle$ constrained to the orthogonality condition $\left\langle\Psi_{\beta} \mid \Psi_{\gamma}\right\rangle=\delta_{\beta, \gamma}$. Clearly the minimum of this functional is the sum of the $n$ lowest eigenvalues $E_{0}+\cdots+$ $E_{n-1}$ of the Hamiltonian $H$, and a minimizer is provided by the first $n$ eigenfunctions. In an MPS framework, the tensor $U\left(\alpha_{1}\right.$, $\left.\ldots, \alpha_{d}, \gamma\right)$ corresponding to the $\gamma^{\text {th }}$ eigenstate with order $d+1$ as is shown in Figure 33a can be expressed as a network shown in Figure 33b. Therefore, the network contains $d+1$ component tensors and in each optimization step $\gamma$ is shifted through the network. Although, this procedure is commonly used in the DMRG community, it is worth mentioning that $\gamma$ index has a different physical meaning than the $\alpha$ indices. Quite recently alternative methods to calculate excited states have also been introduced. ${ }^{[129-132]}$
(a)

(b)


Figure 33. a) Graphical representation of the full tensor $U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}, \gamma\right)$ when excited states are also calculated. $\alpha$ stands for the physical indices while $\gamma$ labels the excited states. b) Tensor network representation of the full tensor.
4.4.3 Optimization of the Schmidt ranks using DBSS approach and entropy sum rule. The two-orbital variant of the DMRG method has originally been employed with a fixed number of block states as shown above while the degree of entanglement between the DMRG blocks for a given superblock configuration is related to the Schmidt rank $r_{\text {sch }}$ as discussed in sections 3 and 4.3.3. Therefore, the fluctuation of the truncation error makes the utilization of eq. (191) less stable. It is more efficient to control the truncation error $\delta \delta_{\text {TR }}$ at each renormalization step and change the number of block states dynamically. ${ }^{[24]}$

Alternatively, one can control the truncation in terms of the quantum information loss $\chi$, expressed by the von Neumann and Rényi entropies. ${ }^{[55]}$ In a given DMRG, renormalization step denoting by $S^{(1)}$ the entropy of the left block of length $I$ and by $S_{I+1}$ the entropy of the $I+1^{\text {th }}$ orbital, the sum of the entropies of these subsystems is reduced by forming a larger block, $(\mathrm{L}) \equiv(\mathrm{I}) \cdot$, is given as

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{(1)}+S_{I+1}-S^{(L)}=I^{(I)} \geq 0, \tag{192}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the mutual information $I^{(1)}$ quantifies the correlation between the subsystem and the orbital (similarly to the mutual information in eq. (164), doing the same for two orbitals). This means that if $I^{(l)}>0$ then we need more information for the description of the state of the (I) block and the $\cdot$ separately than for the description of them as a whole $(\mathrm{L})=(\mathrm{I})^{\cdot}$, that is, they are correlated. A similar relation holds for the right block, $(R) \equiv \cdot(r)$, as well. If an effective system of length $d+2$ is formed by adding two noninteracting orbitals to the right and left ends of the chain, all blocks containing 1 to $d$ orbitals of the original system can be formed by the forward and backward sweeps. The total information gain during a half sweep can be calculated as $\sum_{l=1}^{d-1} I^{(1)}$. In general, $I^{(1)}$ is also a function of subsequent sweeps. However, once the DMRG method has converged, subsequent DMRG sweeps do not change $S^{(1)}$ and $S_{1}$. If, additionally, all $M_{l}=q^{l}$ and $M_{r}=q^{r}$ basis states of the blocks are kept at each iteration step, i.e., no truncation is applied, a sum rule holds, which relates the total information gain within a full half sweep and the sum of orbital entropies given as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{l=1}^{d-1} I^{(I)}=\sum_{l=1}^{d} S_{l}, \tag{193}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we have used $S^{(1)}=S_{1}$ and $S^{(d)}=0$.
This equality, however, does not hold in practical DMRG calculations since during the renormalization process $S^{(L)}$ is reduced to $S_{\text {Trunc }}^{(L)}$ due to the truncation of the basis states. Once the DMRG method has converged, the following equality should hold to a good accuracy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{l=1}^{d-1} I^{(I)} \simeq \sum_{l=1}^{d} S_{l}-\sum_{l=1}^{d-1}\left(S^{(L)}-S_{\text {Trunc }}^{(L)}\right) \tag{194}
\end{equation*}
$$

An analogous relationship holds for the backward sweep as well. In order to control the quantum information loss, $M_{L}$ (or $M_{R}$ ) is increased systematically at each renormalization step until the following condition holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
S^{(L)}-S_{\text {Trunc }}^{(L)}<\chi, \tag{195}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\chi$ is an a priori defined error margin. For $S^{(L)}$, i.e., before the truncation, $M_{L}=M_{l} q$ while for $S_{\text {Trunc }}^{(L)}$ according to eq. (195) $M_{L}^{\text {Trunc }} \leq M_{l} q$ is used. This approach guarantees that the number of block states are adjusted according to the entanglement between the DMRG blocks and the a priori defined accuracy can be reached. In addition, an entropy sum rule based on eq. (194) can be used as an alternative test of convergence. ${ }^{[55]}$

In order to reduce the possibility of convergence to a local minima, the minimum number of block states, $M_{\text {min }}$ must also be introduced. Setting $M_{\min } \simeq q^{3}$ or $q^{4}$ is sufficient in most cases. The maximum number of block states selected dynamically during the course of iterations denoted by $M_{\max }$ determines whether a calculation for a given accuracy can be performed on the available computational resources. It is worth to emphasize that this approach does not work for the one-orbital variant of the DMRG algorithm since the Schmidt number of a one-orbital superblock configuration $M_{L}=M_{1} q$ cannot be larger than $M_{r}$ This prevents $M_{l}$ to increase above $M_{r}$ according to eq. (154).

As an example, relevant quantities as a function of DMRG iteration steps are shown in Figure 32b for LiF at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. for the optimized tensor arrangements (ordering) using the DBSS procedure with $M_{\text {min }}=64$ and $\chi=10^{-7}$. In Figure 31 c , the convergence of the ground state energy as a function of DMRG sweeping for various fixed $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$ using the DBSS procedure is shown. Using eq. (191) and data points obtained for $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }} \geq 10^{-6}$ after the $10^{\text {th }}$ sweep the extrapolated energy is $E=-107.11519(2)$, for $\delta \varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}} \geq 10^{-9}$ it is $E=-107.115216925(2)$, while $E_{\text {exact }}=-107.1152169273$.
4.4.4 Optimization of the network hierarchy (ordering) and entanglement localization. As was briefly mentioned before, in order to use QC-DMRG as a black box method, first the arrangement of orbitals along a one-dimensional topology has to be optimized (ordering) in order to reduce the set of Schmidt ranks when the system is systematically partitioned into a left and right parts during the DMRG sweeping procedure. ${ }^{[9,11,13,24,25,49,51,52,55,61,72,82,85,90]}$ This allows us to carry out calculations with much smaller number of block states using the DBSS approach ${ }^{[11,24,55]}$ (section 4.4.3). For the onedimensional tensor topology, i.e., for DMRG and MPS, the distance function is $d_{i j}=|i-j|$ in eq. (190) and using $\eta=2$ has the advantage that this optimization task can be carried out using concepts of spectral graph theory. ${ }^{[251]}$ It follows that the so called Fiedler vector $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots x_{d}\right)$ is the solution that minimizes $F(x)=x^{\dagger} L x=\sum_{i, j} l_{i j}\left(x_{i}-x_{j}\right)^{2}$ subject to the constraints $\sum_{i} x_{i}=0$ and $\sum_{i} x_{i}^{2}=1$, where the graph Laplacian is $L_{i j}=D_{i j}-l_{i j}$ with the diagonal $D_{i j}=\delta_{i j} \sum_{j^{\prime}} l_{i j}$. The second eigenvector of the Laplacian is the Fiedler vector ${ }^{[252,253]}$ which defines a (one-dimensional) embedding of the graph on a line that tries to respect the highest entries of $I_{i j}$ and the edge length of the graph. Ordering the entries of the Fiedler vector by nonincreasing or nondecreasing way provides us a possible ordering. Usually, the best ordering obtained with small
(a)

(b)

(c)


Figure 34. Optimization of tensor hierarchy (ordering) and topology by minimizing the overall entanglement $I_{\text {overall }}$ for the LiF at the equilibrium bond length $r=3.05$ a.u. a) and b) Are for the one dimensional MPS like topology for the original ordering and for the optimized ordering, respectively. c) Shows the optimized topology on the tree (small dots indicate not used grid points of the tree). The total quantum information $I_{\text {tot }}$ given in (163) does not change but the overall entanglement $l_{\text {overall }}$ drops significantly.
number of block states also provide almost the best ordering for calculation performed with large number of block states, thus this task can be carried out with a limited number of block states. As an example, nonoptimal and optimized tensor orderings for LiF at the equilibrium bond length $r=3.05$ a.u. are shown in Figures 34a and 34b for the one-dimensional network topology, respectively. For both tensor topologies $I_{\text {tot }}=1.32$, given in eq. (163), does not change but the overall entanglement $l_{\text {overall, }}$ given in eq. (190), drops significantly from 126.47 to 19.63 . As a consequence, the maximum height and the spread of the block entropy is reduced significantly as shown in Figures 15a and 15b. Since Schmidt ranks are related to the block entropy, the same accuracy can be reached using much less block states and sweeps in the optimized (ordered) case. This leads to a huge save in CPU time and memory. ${ }^{[11,24,25,95]}$
4.4.5 Optimization of the network topology. Another possibility to minimize the overall entanglement $l_{\text {overall }}$ given by eq. (190) is to carry out network topology optimization. Based on the two-dimensional entanglement graph shown in Figure 18a, it is clear that orbitals are entangled with each other with different strengths. Therefore, when a tensor network is formed, the obvious choice is to allow the coordination number $z_{i}$ to vary from orbital to orbital. ${ }^{[98]}$

For the tree topology, see in section 4.3.4, $d_{i j}$ in eq. (190) can be computed as the distance from the center to $i$, plus the distance from the center to $j$, minus twice the distance from the center to their lowest common ancestor. The lowest common ancestor can be obtained within a linear preprocessing time $\mathcal{O}(d)$ and a constant query time using the Berkman's algorithm. ${ }^{[254]}$

In practice, the optimal structure of the tree tensor network can be determined in a self-consistent way. First the oneorbital entropy and two-orbital mutual information is calculated with $z_{i}=2$ and fixed small number of block states using the ordering of orbitals for which the $T_{i j}$ and $V_{i j k l}$ integral files were generated in order to determine entropy profiles qualitatively. Next orbitals with largest entropy values are placed close to the center of the network by keeping together those orbitals which are connected by large $I_{i j}$ bonds as is shown in Figure 34 c. Using such an optimized tensor topology, the overall
entanglement optimized for the $z_{i}=2$ case can drop even further. In the present example for the LiF, it reduces from $I_{\text {overall }}^{\mathrm{MPS}}$ $=19.63$ to $I_{\text {overall }}^{\text {TNS }}=5.53$. As a result, the same numerical accuracy obtained with an MPS topology could have been reached with smaller number of block states and using less iteration steps when the optimized tree topology was used. ${ }^{[100]}$

The overall efficiency of the QC-TTNS method is determined by two major parameters. On the one hand tensor ranks $M$ decrease by going from QC-DMRG to QC-TTNS, but on the order hand the orders $z$ of the tensors increases. Although, the computational cost of one iteration step is proportional to $M^{z+1}$, the number of tensors with $z=1$ lying on the boundaries of the network increases exponentially when larger and larger systems are considered. Therefore, there is an expected crossover in CPU time between the full sweep of the QC-MPS and QC-TTNS. It is worth mentioning, that a two-orbital variant of the TTNS ansatz has also been considered in which the $z-1$ environment blocks are mapped into one environment block through the so-called half-renormalization (HR) algorithm. ${ }^{[99]}$ At present, optimization tasks are less established and straightforward, thus further developments are mandatory in order to fully utilize the potentials relying behind the TTNS algorithm.
4.4.6 Optimization of the basis using entanglement protocols. In the past 15 years, various orbital bases have been employed to study quantum chemical systems. ${ }^{[11-13,48,51,61,68,70,75,79,84,85,90]}$ Although the impact of a given basis on the efficiency of the QC-DMRG or QC-TTNS can be monitored by the convergence of the energy, a rigorous analysis in terms of the resulting entanglement patterns is mandatory in order to choose the most appropriate basis. ${ }^{[95]}$ This is due to the fact, that the mutual information is orbital basis dependent. Therefore, besides orbital ordering and optimization of tensor topology the overall entanglement $l_{\text {overall }}$ can be manipulated by changing the orbital basis as well. The performance of QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS can be optimized by using proper choice of the orbital basis, i.e., the same state can be obtained with much smaller number of block states. ${ }^{[17,95,150]}$ As an example, entanglement patterns reported ${ }^{[95]}$ for a ring of Be atoms using canonical HF and localized (Foster-Boys ${ }^{[255]}$ ) orbitals are shown in Figure 35. The overall entanglement has been found to be much smaller in the


Figure 35. Colorscaled plot of two-orbital mutual information (for optimized orbital ordering using the Fiedler vector) for the ground state for $\mathrm{Be}_{6}$ for a stretched structure, $d_{\text {Be-Be }}=3.30 \AA$, using the DMRG method with canonical a) and local b) orbitals. $I_{\text {tot }}=7.81, I_{\text {overall }}=332.38$ with the canonical basis and $I_{\text {tot }}=5.83, I_{\text {overall }}=58.1$ with the local basis. (Reproduced from Ref. [95], with permission from American Physical Society.)
latter case and as a consequence the same accuracy has been reached with much smaller number of block states.

Therefore, a main goal is to find a basis in which entanglement is localized as much as possible at the orbitals of the network, what would guarantee that a given precision could be attained with a smaller number of block states, and thus with less computational effort. One possibility is to find the optimal basis can be obtained by a canonical transformation of the fermionic modes using an $d \times d$ unitary matrix $U$, see section 2.5. In general, there are two ways to implement the basis transformation: one is based on the state and the other is based on the Hamiltonian, i.e.,

$$
E(U) \equiv\langle\Psi| U H U^{\dagger}|\Psi\rangle=\langle\Psi(U)| H|\Psi(U)\rangle=\langle\Psi| H(U)|\Psi\rangle
$$

Since $E(U)$ is a nonconvex function of the parameters $U$, it is a highly nontrivial problem to find the absolute minimum. Gradient search has been applied ${ }^{[98]}$ to the function $E(U)$ expressed as

$$
E(U)=\sum_{i j} \tilde{T}(U)_{i j}\left\langle a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{j}\right\rangle+\sum_{i j k l} \tilde{V}(U)_{i j k l}\left\langle a_{i}^{+} a_{j}^{\dagger} a_{k} a_{l}\right\rangle
$$

with $\tilde{T}(U)=U T U^{\dagger}$ and $\tilde{V}(U)=(U \otimes U) V(U \otimes U)^{\dagger}$, see equation (48). In this case, the correlation functions $\left\langle a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{j}\right\rangle$ and $\left\langle a_{i}^{\dagger} a_{j}^{\dagger} a_{k} a_{1}\right\rangle$ could be calculated with respect to the original state since they are independent of the parameters in $U$. The function $E(U)$ in this form and its gradient could be calculated explicitly and efficiently for different parameter sets $U$, which made the gradient search feasible. This assures that the energy decreases significantly in the course of the algorithm since the orbital optimization is performed repeatedly during the course of the network optimization.
4.4.7 Optimization of the network initialization based on entanglement. Besides ordering, network topology, and basis states optimization, the optimal performance of SVD based methods is strongly effected by the initial conditions, or in other words
by the initial matrix and tensor configurations. If a poorly approximated starting configuration is used, the convergence can be very slow and the DMRG can even be trapped in local minima. ${ }^{[24,25,59]}$ In the past decade, various solutions have been introduced in order to optimize network initialization. ${ }^{[11,25,49,59,90,126]}$ In the following, we focus on an entanglement-based procedure.

Having a tensor network with a given topology and hierarchy (ordering), the elements of the component tensors are random numbers in the first iteration step. In QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS methods various, $\Xi$ truncated Hilbert spaces can be formed from different subsets of the corresponding basis states in order to approximate $\Lambda$ Hilbert space. In other words, for a given partitioning of the system into blocks, various environment blocks can be generated for a given system block.

In case of the two-orbital QC-DMRG, the optimization starts with a superblock configuration $I=1$ and $r=d-3$ as shown in Figure 25. When the SVD is performed, the eigenvalue spectrum of the reduced density matrix of the (L) block depends on how the truncated basis was formed for the right block. Since the exact representation of the right block would require $M_{r}=q^{d-1-2}$ states, which is too large for large $d$, only a subset of orbitals is included to form the active space. As an example, three different environment blocks formed from three different subsets of $M_{r}=16$ basis states (or $M_{r}=17$ due to spin reflection symmetry) obtained for the superblock configuration $I=1$ and $r=9$ (see Figure 36) of the LiF molecule for $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. with CAS $(6,12)$ are shown in Table 6. Using an ordering according to the energy, the first, second, and third orbitals are the HF orbitals. The selected $M_{r}=16$ environment states together with the $M_{l} q^{2}=64$ states of the (I)•• composite system fulfill the conservation of total number of particles with up and down spins, i.e., $N_{\downarrow}^{(1)}+N_{l+1, \downarrow}+N_{l+2, \downarrow}+N_{\downarrow}^{(r)}=3$ and $N_{\uparrow}^{(1)}+N_{l+1, \uparrow}+N_{l+2, \uparrow}+N_{\uparrow}^{(r)}=3$.
By forming the bi-partite spliting of the system with $L=2$ and $R=10$, the eigenvalue spectrum of $\rho^{(\mathrm{L})}$ (and $\rho^{(\mathrm{R})}$ ) corresponding to the three subsets and the one corresponding to the exact solution obtained by $M_{r}=8000$ block states are shown

$M_{L}=M_{l} q$
$M_{R}=q M_{r}$
Figure 36. A superblock configuration with $I=1$ and $r=9$.
in Figure 37. It is obvious that the block entropy of the system block, $S^{(L)}$, depends on the basis states used to construct the (R) environment block, as it increased from $10^{-5}$ to 0.22 . Therefore, $S^{(L)}$ should be maximized by finding the best representation of the environment block for a given superblock configuration and target state, i.e, to get as close as possible to the exact solution, in the present case to $S^{(L)}=0.28$.

This can be achieved by including highly entangled orbitals from the very beginning in the calculations. Therefore, in order to achieve fast and stable convergence, the active space has to be expanded iteratively using orbitals with largest oneorbital entropy values. The sequence by which orbitals are taken into account is determined by the so called CAS-vector, which is simply a rendered sequence of orbital indices with decreasing one-orbital entropy value. The initial CAS vector can be determined based on the chemical character of the molecule or in a self-consistent fashion based on the singleorbital entropies. These features are incorporated in the DEAS procedure, ${ }^{[25]}$ see in section 4.3.3, starting with superblock configuration as shown in Figure 36.

This approach has also been extended by including protocols based on the CI procedure. ${ }^{[111,256]}$ In standard CI techniques, the trial wave function is written as a linear combination of determinants with expansion coefficients determined by requiring that the energy should be minimized. ${ }^{[257]}$ The number of determinants included in the Cl wave function expansion is increased systematically in order to achieve a better accuracy. The exact wave function can be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{\mathrm{Cl}}=a_{\mathrm{HF}} \Phi_{\mathrm{HF}}+\sum_{S} a_{S} \Phi_{S}+\sum_{D} a_{D} \Phi_{D}+\sum_{T} a_{T} \Phi_{T}+\ldots \tag{196}
\end{equation*}
$$

where determinants indicated by the subscripts $S, D, T, Q$ are singly, doubly, triply, quadruply, etc. excited relative to the HF configuration.

If the HF orbitals are known, one can keep only those right block states which together with the $1 q^{2}$ states of the (1)•• composite system describe an excitation corresponding to a given $\mathrm{Cl}-$ level. In the first iteration step, this can be determined explicitly and the various Cl excitations corresponding to basis states shown in Figure 36 are given in the right column. In subsequent iteration steps, HF and non-HF orbitals can get mixed in renormalized multiorbital basis states and they thus cannot be labeled by the Cl excitation level. Nevertheless, the maximum Cl level that block states could correspond to depends on the number of HF orbitals falling into the given block. Since the segment of the HF-orbitals belonging to the right(environment) block is known, the restricted subspace of the environment block can be formed for a given Cl-level in the CI-DEAS procedure. Therefore, the right block contains

Table 6. Three different subsets of states are formed from $M_{r}=16$ states (or $M_{r}=17$ due to spin reflection symmetry) expressed explicitly in an oneorbital basis which together with the $\boldsymbol{M}_{\boldsymbol{I}} \boldsymbol{q}^{2}=64(\mathrm{I}) \bullet$ - subsystem states fulfill the conservation of total number of particles with up and down spins.

| $\alpha_{r}$ |  | configuration 1 | CI | $\alpha_{r}$ |  |  | configuration 2 |  | CI |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 |  | - - - - - - | 0 | 1 |  | - - | - | - - | 0 |
| 2 |  | - - - - - - $\downarrow$ | 1 | 2 |  | - - | - - - $\downarrow$ | - - | 1 |
| 3 |  | $-------\uparrow$ | 1 | 3 |  | - - | $---\uparrow$ | - | 1 |
| 4 |  | - - - - - - $\uparrow \downarrow$ | 2 | 4 |  | - - | - - - $\downarrow \downarrow$ | - - | 2 |
| 5 |  | $------\downarrow-$ | 1 | 5 |  | - - | - - - $\downarrow$ | - - | 1 |
| 6 |  | $------\uparrow-$ | 1 | 6 |  | - - | - - - $\uparrow$ | - | 1 |
| 7 |  | $------\downarrow \downarrow$ | 2 | 7 |  | - - | $---\downarrow \downarrow$ | - | 2 |
| 8 |  | $------\uparrow \uparrow$ | 2 | 8 |  | - - | $---\uparrow \uparrow$ | - | 2 |
| 9 |  | $------\downarrow \uparrow$ | 2 | 9 |  | - - | $---\uparrow \downarrow$ | - | 2 |
| 10 |  | $------\uparrow \downarrow$ | 2 | 10 |  | - - | $---\downarrow \uparrow$ | - | 2 |
| 11 |  | $------\uparrow \downarrow-$ | 2 | 11 |  | - - | $----\uparrow \downarrow$ | - | 2 |
| 12 |  | $-----\downarrow--$ | 1 | 12 |  | - - | - - - - | $-\downarrow$ | 1 |
| 13 |  | $-----\uparrow--$ | 1 | 13 |  | - - | - - - - | $-\uparrow$ | 1 |
| 14 |  | $-----\downarrow-\uparrow$ | 2 | 14 |  | - - | $---\downarrow-$ | $-\downarrow$ | 2 |
| 15 |  | $-----\uparrow-\downarrow$ | 2 | 15 |  | - - | $---\uparrow$ | - | 2 |
| 16 |  | $-----\downarrow \downarrow-$ | 2 | 16 |  | - - | $---\uparrow$ | - | 2 |
| 17 |  | $-----\uparrow \uparrow$ | 2 | 17 |  | - - | $---\downarrow-$ | - $\uparrow$ | 2 |
|  |  | E E E E E E A A A |  |  |  | E E E | E E E A A | E A |  |


| $\alpha_{r}$ | configuration 3 | CI |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | - - | 0 |
| 2 | $---\downarrow-$ | 1 |
| 3 | $---\uparrow---$ | 1 |
| 4 | - - - $\downarrow \downarrow$ - - | 2 |
| 5 | - - - $\downarrow$ | 1 |
| 6 | $----\uparrow---$ | 1 |
| 7 | $---\uparrow \downarrow---$ | 2 |
| 8 | $---\downarrow \uparrow---$ | 2 |
| 9 | $---\uparrow \downarrow$ | 2 |
| 10 | $\downarrow-$ - | 1 |
| 11 | $\uparrow---$ | 1 |
| 12 | $\downarrow--\uparrow$ | 2 |
| 13 | $\uparrow--\downarrow---$ | 2 |
| 14 | $\downarrow---\uparrow$ | 2 |
| 15 | $\uparrow---\downarrow-\cdots-$ | 2 |
| 16 | $\uparrow \downarrow----$ | 2 |
|  | A E E A A E E E E |  |

Labels E and A stands for empty and active orbitals respectively. In the very right columns the corresponding Cl levels are indicated. The CAS vectors describing the three configurations are ( $1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12$ ) , $(2,1,9,10,3,12,11,6,5,4,8,7)$, and ( $7,8,4,5,6,11,12,3,10,9,1,2$ ), respectively.


Figure 37. Eigenvalue spectrum of $\rho^{(L)}$ (and $\rho^{(R)}$ ) corresponding to the three subsets of environment states shown in Table 6.
states for a given CI-level while the total wave function can contain higher excitations as well due to the correlation between the two blocks. This procedure allows one to control the minimum Cl level to be used and a double optimization is carried out in each iteration step. On the one hand, the environment block states are constructed at each iteration step based on the left block basis states, thus they are optimized for the renormalized system (left) block. On the other hand, during the SVD step the left block states are optimized according to a well represented environment block, thus the reduced density matrix is well defined and block states can be selected efficiently based on the entropy considerations (DBSS, see in section 4.4.3). This procedure guarantees that several highly entangled orbitals are correlated from the very beginning and both static and dynamic correlations are taken into account, which helps to avoid convergence to local minima. Since a significant part of the correlation energy can be obtained in this way, usually at the end of the initialization procedure, i.e., after one-half sweep, chemical accuracy is reached. The starting value of $M_{r}\left(M_{\text {start }}\right)$ is set prior to the calculation, but during the iteration procedure $M_{r}$ is adjusted as $M_{r}=\max \left(M_{l}, M_{\text {start }}\right)$ in order to construct at least as many environment states as the left block has (to avoid zero Schmidt values).

The CI-DEAS procedure also has an important technical aspect. Based on the selected $M_{r}$ basis states orbitals of the right block can be identified as doubly filled (D), empty (E) or active (A). If only the empty states appear in a given column of the configurational space as shown in Table 6, the orbital is considered as empty, while if only the doubly filled state appears it is considered as doubly filled. Otherwise, the orbital is active. This is indicated explicitly in the last rows of Table 6. It has been shown that empty orbitals can be neglected, while a partial summation over the doubly filled orbitals gives some corrections to the terms obtained by the partial summation over the active orbitals. Therefore, the effective size of the environment block can be reduced to the number of active orbitals. ${ }^{[25,256]}$ Usually the number of active orbitals in the
environment block range from 5 to 10 which allows one to use larger $M_{\text {start }}$ without a significant increase in computational time.

As an example, the eigenvalue spectrum of the reduced subsystem density matrix for a block of $I=12$ contiguous orbitals as a function of DMRG sweeping for the $\operatorname{LiF} \operatorname{CAS}(6,25)$ at $d_{\mathrm{Li}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ a.u. is shown in Figure 38 using a nonoptimized initialization procedure (a) and the CI-DEAS procedure (b).

Inclusion of the CI-DEAS procedure into the QC-TTNS method is straightforward. The only difference is that in a given iteration step of the warmup sweep instead of two, $z_{i}-$ 1 environment blocks has to be formed.
4.4.8 Optimization of the sparsity using symmetries. As has been introduced in section 4.1.4, symmetry operators (with eigenvalues $Q$, called quantum numbers) can be used to decompose the Hilbert space into subspaces (sectors). ${ }^{[220]}$ Therefore, the efficiency of the QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS methods can be increased significantly by applying quantum numbers. These include Abelian symmetries as particle number, spin projection ${ }^{[48]}$, spin reflection ${ }^{[150]}$, and Abelian point group symmetries ${ }^{[25,51,54]}$ and even non-Abelian symmetries. ${ }^{[14,65,80,90,134-147]}$ In the latter case, the situation, however, becomes more complicated.
If symmetry generators commute with each other, the eigenstates of the Hamiltonian form degenerate multiplets, $\left|\phi_{\alpha, Q_{\alpha}, Q_{\alpha}^{2}}\right\rangle_{\text {, that }}$ that are classified by their label $\alpha$, the quantum numbers $\underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}$ and the internal quantum number $\underline{Q}_{\alpha}^{z}$. The dimension of a subspace (sector) $\alpha$ depends uniquely on its quantum numbers $\underline{Q}_{\alpha}$, i.e. $\operatorname{dim}(\alpha)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\underline{Q}_{\alpha}\right)$. In the following, we use the shorthand notation introduced in section 4.1 and write $\left|\phi_{\alpha, Q_{\alpha}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha}^{2}}\right\rangle$, as $\left|\alpha, \underline{Q}_{\alpha}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha}^{z}\right\rangle$.

In general, the symmetry operators of the Hamiltonian are the representations $\mathcal{U}$ of the symmetry group $\mathcal{G}$ on the Hilbert space, acting as


Figure 38. Eigenvalue spectrum of the reduced subsystem density matrix for a block of $I=12$ contiguous orbitals as a function of DMRG sweeping for the LiF at $d_{\text {Li-F }}=3.05$ a.u. using a nonoptimized initialization procedure a) and the CI-DEAS procedure b).

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{U}(g) \mathbf{H} \mathcal{U}^{-1}(g)=\mathbf{H}, \tag{197}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{U}(g)$ is the unitary representation for the symmetry $g \in \mathcal{G}$. Specially, if the symmetries are local in the sense that they decompose into unitary operators which commute with each other and act independently at different orbitals, then not only the whole Hamiltonian but also every local and interaction Hamiltonian are invariant under the group $\mathcal{G}$. Furthermore, $\mathcal{G}$ and correspondingly $\mathcal{U}$ can be decomposed into a direct product of $\Gamma$ subgroups $\mathcal{G}_{\gamma}(\gamma=1, \ldots, \Gamma)$, each acting independently on every orbital,

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathcal{G}=\mathcal{G}_{1} \times \mathcal{G}_{2} \times \ldots \times \mathcal{G}_{\Gamma},  \tag{198}\\
\mathcal{U}(g)=\prod_{\gamma=1}^{\Gamma} \mathcal{U}_{\gamma}\left(g_{\gamma}\right)=\prod_{\gamma=1}^{\Gamma} \prod_{i} \mathcal{U}_{\gamma, i}\left(g_{\gamma}\right) . \tag{199}
\end{gather*}
$$

Once a specific decomposition of the symmetry is obtained, $\Gamma$ number of quantum numbers classify the irreducible subspaces (multiplets) of the subsystem Hamiltonians $\underline{Q}=\left\{Q^{1}, Q^{2}, \ldots, Q^{\Gamma}\right\}$ and states within the multiplet are then labeled by the internal quantum numbers $\underline{Q}^{z}=\left\{Q^{1, z}, Q^{2, z}, \ldots, Q^{\Gamma, z}\right\}$. The dimension of a subspace $\alpha$ depends uniquely on its quantum numbers $\underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}$ i.e., $\operatorname{dim}(\alpha)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\underline{Q}_{\alpha}\right)=\prod_{\gamma=1}^{\Gamma} \operatorname{dim}\left(Q_{\alpha}^{\gamma}\right)$.

Operators can also be arranged into irreducible tensor operators, and an irreducible tensor operator multiplet $A$ is correspondingly described by quantum numbers $a$, while members of the multiplet are labeled by $\underline{a}^{z}$ with $\underline{a}$ and $a^{z}$ being $\Gamma$-component vectors. The Wigner-Éckart theorem ${ }^{[221-224]}$ tells us that, apart from trivial group theoretical factors (ClebschGordan coefficients), the matrix elements of the members of a given operator multiplet and states within two multiplets, $\mid \alpha$, $\left.Q_{\alpha}, Q_{\alpha}^{z}\right\rangle$ and two multiplets, $\left|\alpha^{\prime}, Q_{\alpha^{\prime}}, Q_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{z}\right\rangle$ are simply related by
$\left\langle\alpha, \underline{Q}_{\alpha} \underline{Q}_{\alpha}^{z}\right| A_{\underline{a}, \underline{a}_{z}}\left|\alpha^{\prime}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}} \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{z}\right\rangle=\left\langle\alpha\|A\| \alpha^{\prime}\right\rangle\left\langle\underline{Q}_{\alpha} \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{z} \mid \underline{a}, \underline{a}_{z} ; \underline{Q}_{\alpha} \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{z}\right\rangle$
where $\left\langle\alpha\|A\| \alpha^{\prime}\right\rangle$ denotes the reduced (invariant) matrix element of $A$, and the generalized Clebsch-Gordan coefficients are simply defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\underline{Q}_{\alpha} \underline{Q}_{\alpha}^{z} \mid \underline{a} \underline{a}^{z} ; \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}} \underline{Q}_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{z}\right\rangle \equiv \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\Gamma}\left\langle Q_{\alpha}^{\gamma} Q_{\alpha}^{\gamma, z} \mid a^{\gamma} a^{\gamma, z} Q_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{\gamma} ; Q_{\alpha^{\prime}}^{\gamma, z}\right\rangle \tag{201}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the presence of symmetries, one has to use the ClebschGordan coefficients to build (I) block states from the block (I) and orbital • states that transform as irreducible multiplets under the symmetry transformations, $\mathcal{U}(\mathrm{g})$,

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left|m_{(L)}, \underline{Q}_{m_{(L)}}, \underline{Q}_{m_{(L)}}^{z}\right\rangle \equiv \sum_{\underline{Q}_{m_{(1)}}^{z}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha_{\mid+1}}^{z}}\left\langle\underline{Q}_{m_{(L)}} \underline{Q}_{m_{(L)}}^{z} \mid \underline{Q}_{\alpha_{l+1}} \underline{Q}_{\alpha_{\mid+1}}^{z} ; \underline{Q}_{m_{(l)}} \underline{Q}_{m_{(1)}}^{z}\right\rangle^{*} \\
\left|\alpha_{l+1}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha_{l+1}}, \underline{Q}_{\alpha_{\mid+1}}^{z}\right\rangle \otimes\left|m_{(\mathrm{I})}, \underline{Q}_{m_{(l)}}, \underline{Q}_{m_{(l)}}^{z}\right\rangle, \tag{202}
\end{gather*}
$$

Therefore, subsystem Hamiltonians have a block-diagonal structure and subsystem reduced density matrices are also scalar under symmetry operators. This decomposition property is crucial for using symmetries in the QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS calculations in order to boost their performance.

To give a simple example, let us take into account the spin and charge symmetries, i.e., $\mathcal{G}=\mathcal{G}_{\text {spin }} \times \mathcal{G}_{\text {charge }}$. If we use only $\mathcal{G}_{\text {spin }}=U(1)$ and $\mathcal{G}_{\text {charge }}=U(1)$ symmetries, then one has two hopping operators, $\mathbf{c}_{i, \uparrow}^{\dagger}$ and $\mathbf{c}_{i, \downarrow}^{\dagger}$ as defined in section 4.1. In contrast to this, if we use $\mathcal{G}_{\text {spin }}=S U(2)$ spin symmetry, (while $\mathcal{G}_{\text {charge }}=U(1)$ remains the same as before) $\mathcal{U}=\mathcal{U}_{\text {spin }} \mathcal{U}_{\text {charge }}$, with $\mathcal{U}_{\text {spin }}=\prod_{i} \mathcal{U}_{\text {spin }, i}$, then only one hopping operator remains since matrix elements of $\mathbf{c}_{i, \uparrow}^{\dagger}$ and $\mathbf{c}_{i, \downarrow}^{\dagger}$ are related with each other by symmetry and they form a single operator multiplet $\mathbf{c}_{i}^{\dagger}=\left\{\mathbf{c}_{i, \downarrow}^{\dagger}, \mathbf{c}_{i, \uparrow}^{\dagger}\right\}$ of spin 1/2. The matrix elements of such multiplet are determined using the Wigner-Eckart theorem

$$
\left\langle\mu\left\|\mathbf{c}_{i}^{+}\right\| v\right\rangle=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & 0  \tag{203}\\
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -\sqrt{2} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

where the original $\mathbb{C}^{4}$ space is reduced to $\mathbb{C}^{3}$ since only three basis states remain $\mu, v \in\{|-\rangle,|\uparrow\rangle,|\uparrow \downarrow\rangle\}$. When the system is half-filled, utilization of $\mathcal{G}_{\text {charge }}=S U(2)$ symmetry besides the $\mathcal{G}_{\text {spin }}=S U(2)$ spin symmetry is straightforward. In this case, the hopping operator becomes a $2 \times 2$ matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \sqrt{2}  \tag{204}\\
-\sqrt{2} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

where the original $\mathbb{C}^{4}$ space further reduces to $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ since only two basis states remain, $\left|\phi_{\mu}\right\rangle,\left|\phi_{v}\right\rangle \in\{|\uparrow\rangle,|\uparrow \downarrow\rangle\}$. A detailed derivation of reduced operators and construction of the block states prepared as a pedagogical introduction to the field can be found in the literature, ${ }^{[142]}$ and the related free $C++$ sourcecode can be downloaded from http://www.phy.bme.hu/ $\sim$ dmnrg/ $/{ }^{[258]}$ Other free source codes with SU(2) spin symmetries are also available. ${ }^{[127,259]}$ Utilization of symmetries allows one to target states with given symmetries and to keep $M$ number of multiplets what corresponds to significantly more $U(1)$ states what is crucial in order to achieve good numerical accuracy.
4.4.9 Stability of the wavefunction. Traditional post-HF quantum chemical methods like Cl or couple clusters (CC) systematically improve a reference wavefunction (often only the HF determinant, as in (196)) by inclusion of single, double, and higher excitations in the wave operator. In case of Cl the wave operator takes a linear form, while CC uses a more sophisticated exponential ansatz.

In contrast to these, QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS take into account all the various excitations picking up the most important ones by minimizing the energy. As an example, the $\mid U\left(\alpha_{1}\right.$, $\left.\ldots \alpha_{d}\right)\left.\right|^{2}$ weights casted according to an excitation level with respect to the HF reference wavefunction are shown in Figure 39. It demonstrates that higher excitation levels can be important to provide a qualitatively correct description of the wavefunction. (The elements of the full tensor $U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{d}\right)$ can be extracted, according to eq. (176). But note that recovering all components of $U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{d}\right)$ cannot be done efficiently as its size scales exponentially. However as a good approximation of


Figure 39. The $\left|U\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots \alpha_{d}\right)\right|^{2}$ weight of the $d$-orbital basis states corresponding to the various Cl -excitations are shown by different colors in a descending order in a $\log -\log$ a) and in a log-lin scale b) for the LiF for $d_{\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{F}}=3.05$ with CAS( 6,12 ). HF state, $\mathrm{SCl}, \mathrm{DCI}$, etc are indicated by red, blue, green, etc. colors respectively.
the full Cl wavefunction, the Monte Carlo algorithm was used to recover the most important tensor components. ${ }^{[77]}$ )

As a consequence, if the accuracy threshold of the calculation is lowered, the structure of the wave function is retained in essence. Since the DBSS procedure takes care of the change in the entanglement as the system parameters are adjusted, for example, when the bond length in LiF is changed, the various calculated quantities are continuous functions for a given $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$. For the ionic-neutral curve crossing in LiF, ${ }^{[51]}$ this has been demonstrated for the two lowest ${ }^{1} \Sigma^{+}$states and the dipole moment function as illustrated in Figures 40 a and 40 b for $\delta_{\varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}}}=10^{-6}$ and $M_{\text {min }}=64$. In addition, when parameters were cut drastically and very small value of $M_{\text {min }}$ and large $\delta \varepsilon_{\text {TR }}$ were used the dipole moment deviated more significantly from the full-Cl results but they remained continuous even close to the avoided crossing. Therefore, the most important components of the wave function are included by the SVD procedure which provides a stable representation of the wavefunction. Similar results have been reported for the QC-TTNS method. ${ }^{[100]}$
4.4.10 Possible black-box QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS. A possible black-box QC-DMRG and QC-TTNS can be composed of two
phases: the preprocessing phase in which the ordering, network topology, and CAS-vector are optimized using fixed small number of block states and the production phase in which an accurate calculation is performed using the DBSS procedure in order to reach an a priory set error margin. In the preprocessing phase, one can use the ordering for which the integral files were generated and a random CAS vector using limited number of block states. After a full sweep, the one-orbital entropy can be calculated from which the CAS vector can be determined. In a similar way, the two-orbital mutual information and the optimal ordering can be calculated using the Fiedler vector. Next a DMRG calculation can be carried out with the optimized ordering and CAS-vector and the whole cycle is repeated until we obtain lower total energy. In the next step this procedure is repeated, but with larger number of block states. The preprocessing phase takes only a small fraction of the total computational time.

### 4.5 Miscellaneous

4.5.1 Simulation of real materials, geometrical optimization and excited states. As an example, we demonstrate on polydiacetylene (PDA) chains that MPS-based methods can be used


Figure 40. (a) Energy of the two lowest ${ }^{1} \Sigma^{+}$states as a function of the bond length obtained with $\delta_{\varepsilon_{\mathrm{TR}}}=10^{-6}$ and $M_{\text {min }}=16$ using the DBSS procedure. (b) The corresponding dipole moment functions. (Reproduced from Ref. [51], with permission from Taylor and Francis.)
(a)

(b)

(c)


Figure 41. a) Single crystals of diacetylene monomers prepared experimentally where the monomer unit has the structure $\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{C} \equiv \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{C} \equiv \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{R}$. In the $n B C M U$ family $\mathrm{R}=\left(\mathrm{CH}_{2}\right)_{n}-\mathrm{OCONH}-\mathrm{CH}_{2}-\mathrm{COO}-\left(\mathrm{CH}_{2}\right)_{3} \mathrm{CH}_{3}$. b) Polymerization induced by temperature or ultraviolet light leading to polydiacetylenes $\left(\mathrm{C}_{4} \mathrm{R}_{2}\right)_{x}$. c$)$ Lewis structure of a poly-diacetylene unit cell with single, double and triple bond lengths $r_{t}=1.20 \AA, r_{d}=1.36 \AA$, and $r_{s}=1.43 \AA$, respectively.
very efficiently to simulate strongly anisotropic materials in terms of effective Hamiltonians.

PDA chains dispersed with low concentration in their monomer single-crystal matrix are prototypical quasi onedimensional materials. ${ }^{[260-263]}$ The structural disorder in the chains and their surrounding matrix is tiny, thus these materials form the perfect testing-ground for theoretical model studies describing interacting electrons on perfectly ordered chains. In addition, the electronic excitation energies of the diacetylene monomers are much higher than those of the polymer, and the electronic excitations of the chain in the energy range of visible light can be measured with a very high accuracy. ${ }^{[264]}$ Polymerization induced by temperature or ultraviolet light is shown in Figure 41.

The optoelectronic properties of the PDAs are determined by two main correlation effects: the mutual interaction of the electrons and their interaction with the lattice potential. ${ }^{[263,265]}$ In contrast to inorganic semiconductors, the exciton binding energy in PDAs amounts to about $20 \%$ of the single-particle gap, thus Coulomb interaction is substantial and effective and the electron-electron interaction must be treated very accurately. Due to such high computational demand earlier attempts
based on density-functional theory calculations of the bare band structure in local-density approximation failed to reproduce the experimentally measured excitation spectrum. ${ }^{[266,267]}$

In contrast to this, using the DMRG method and by correlating some 100 electrons on 100 orbitals together with a geometrical optimization based on the Hellmann-Feynman theorem, i.e., by minimizing the force-field induced by the electron distribution, ${ }^{[268]}$ very accurate energy spectrum can be obtained. ${ }^{[269]}$ This is shown in Figure 42 and the experimentally measured and DMRG calculated results are also summarized in the corresponding table. In addition, the calculated geometrical structure agrees perfectly with the experimental data, i.e., the single, double and triple bonds are estimated as $r_{t}=1.22, r_{d}=1.37$ and $r_{s}=1.43$.
4.5.2 Four-component DMRG. Quite recently, the first implementation of the relativistic quantum chemical two- and fourcomponent density matrix renormalization group algorithm (2c- and 4 c -DMRG) has also been presented. ${ }^{[89]}$ This method includes a variational description of scalar-relativistic effects and spin-orbit coupling. By correlating 14 electrons on 94 spinors and employing the Dirac-Coulomb Hamiltonian with


Figure 42. (left) Energy levels of in-gap states in the spin-singlet and spin-triplet sectors. Single-tip arrows: optical absorption spectroscopy; double-tip arrows: two-photon absorption spectroscopy. Double arrows: binding energies (gaps). G: singlet ground state ( $1^{1} A_{g}$ ); $S$ : singlet exciton ( $1^{1} B_{u}$ ); $X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}$ : singlet dark states $\left(m^{1} A_{g}\right)$; T: triplet ground state $\left(1^{3} B_{u}\right)$; $T^{*}$ : optical excitation of the triplet ground state $\left(1^{3} A_{g}\right)$; Y: dark triplet state ( $m^{3} B_{u}$ ). (right) Excitation energies in $3 B C M U$ at low temperatures. All energies are measured in eV relative to the energy of the ground state, $E_{\mathrm{G}}=0$. Bold number: directly measured; italic number: estimate. For DMRG results the numbers in square brackets give the excitation energy for the rigid-lattice transition from $G$ $\left(E_{\text {gap }}, E_{\mathrm{S}}, E_{\mathrm{X}_{1,2}}, E_{\mathrm{T}}\right)$ and from $\mathrm{T}\left(\Delta_{\mathrm{opt}}^{\mathrm{t}}\right)$. (Reproduced from Ref. [269], with permission from American Physical Society.)


Figure 43. a) Convergence of the ground state energy (shifted by 20275 $\left.E_{h}\right)$ as a function of iteration steps of the $4 c-\operatorname{DMRG}(14,94)$ $\left(M_{\max }=4500, M_{\min }=1024, M_{\min }^{\text {DEAS }}=2048, \chi=10^{-5}\right) \quad$ approach $\quad$ at $\quad r_{e}^{\exp }$ $=1.872 \AA$ Å. Reference energies calculated by various Cl and CC wave function models are also given as horizontal lines. The inset shows that the 4cDMRG energy drops below the 4c-Cl-SDTQ energy. b) Extrapolation of DMRG energies $\mathrm{E}(M)$-20275 $E_{\mathrm{h}}$ for fixed $M$ values towards the limit $E(M \rightarrow \infty)$-20275 $E_{h}$. Figure is taken from arxiv:1312.0970.
triple- $\zeta$ quality basis, the potential energy surface (PES) and spectroscopic constants have been obtained for the thallium hydride molecule. Utilizing the various entanglement-based optimization techniques discussed in section 4.4, the CCSD reference energy has been reproduced even after the first DMRG sweep as is shown in Figure 43. Although the 4c-CCSDTQ reference energy could not be reached with a maximum of $M=4500$ block states, the resulting 4 c -DMRG potential energy curve did not only effectively reproduced the shape of the 4cCCSDTQ potential energy curve but also yielded accurate spec-
troscopic constants as extracted from a fourth-order polynomial fit. Since QC-DMRG picks up all excitations required to describe the wave function to a given accuracy the general structure of the wave function is preserved and could have been determined even with smaller $M$ values. By making the best of entanglement optimization, the new 2 c - and 4 c -DMRG method is expected to become an efficient approach for heavy-element molecules that exhibit rather strong multiconfigurational character in their ground- and excited states. Development of a 2c- and 4c-TTNS method is straightforward.
4.5.3 Possible technical developments: hybrid CPU/GPU parallelization. The original DMRG algorithm, introduced by S. R. White, was formulated as a single threaded algorithm. ${ }^{[119]}$ In the past, various works have been carried out to accelerate the DMRG algorithm on shared ${ }^{[270,271]}$ and distributed memory ${ }^{[9,53,272,273]}$ architectures. One of the first parallelizations was converting the projection operation to matrix-matrix multiplications and accelerating them via OpenMP interface. ${ }^{[270]} \mathrm{A}$ similar approach has been presented for distributed memory environment (up-to 1024 cores) optimizing the communication between the cores ${ }^{[272]}$, while the acceleration of the computation of correlation function has also been investigated. ${ }^{[273]} \mathrm{A}$ novel direction for parallelization via a modification of the original serial DMRG algorithm have also been introduced. ${ }^{[274]}$

Graphical processing unit (GPU) has been successfully employed in neighboring research areas to accelerate matrix operations. GPU is used to accelerate tensor contractions in Plaquette renormalization states, ${ }^{[275]}$ which can be regarded as an alternative technique to TNS or the DMRG algorithm. The secondorder Spectral Projection algorithm has been accelerated, which is an alternative technique to calculate the density matrix via a recursive series of generalized matrix-matrix multiplications. ${ }^{\text {[276] }}$

Quite recently, it has been investigated how the DMRG method can utilize the enormous computing capabilities of


## Number of retained block states

Figure 44. Performance results of the hybrid CPU-GPU acceleration of the projection operation for the Hubbard model on Intel Xeon E5-2640 2.5 GH CPU + NVidia K20 GPU: 1071 GFlops and $\times 3.5$ speedup is reached. (Theoretical maximum is 1.17 TFlops) Blue bars associated to the secondary vertical axis indicate the ratio of the current GPU workload. (Reproduced from Ref. [277], with permission from Elsevier.)
novel kilo-processor architectures: GPU and field-programmable gate array. ${ }^{[277]}$ In case of GPU, a smart hybrid CPU-GPU acceleration has been presented, which tolerates problems exceeding the GPU memory size, consequently, supporting wide range of problems and GPU configurations. Contrary to earlier, acceleration attempts not only the projection operation was accelerated, but further parts of the diagonalization were also computed on the GPU. Reported results on the onedimensional Hubbard model for a midrange (Intel Core-i7 2600 3.4 GHz CPU + NVidia GTX 570 GPU) and on a high-end configuration (Intel Xeon E5-2640 2.5 GHz CPU + NVidia K20 GPU) showed that if the workload is properly distributed (see Figure 44) the midrange configuration with GPU can be approximately 2.3-2.4 times faster than without GPU, while the high-end configuration can be accelerated by 3.4-3.5 times using the GPU.

The GPU architecture has been found to be a promising accelerator, as the most time-dominant step of the algorithm, the projection operation, can be formulated as independent dense matrix multiplications, which are ideal workload for GPUs. Moreover, in case of high-end GPUs, the acceleration of the projection is so remarkable, that it is worth to consider the acceleration of the rest of the algorithm to obtain a decent overall speed-up. Therefore, extensions to treat $a b$ initio quantum chemical applications and a straightforward generalization of the algorithm to accelerate tensor network state algorithms ${ }^{[44]}$ are promising research directions.

## 5 Summary and Outlook

In the past decade, we have witnessed a breakthrough in electronic structure calculations due to the $D M R G$ method which has become a viable alternative to conventional multiconfiguration wave function approaches. Inclusion of the concepts of entanglement from quantum information theory has paved the road for identifying highly correlated MOs leading to an efficient construction of active spaces and for characterizing the various types of correlation effects relevant for chemical bonding. Quite recently, a reformulation of DMRG in terms of MPS has shown that it is only one special case in a much more general set of methods, the TNS, which is expected to even outperform DMRG/MPS in the near future.

A special class of such ansatz states are the TTNS. The mathematically rigorous analysis of these tensor trees has been completed only partially and many open questions remain, concerning for example numerical procedures, but also more theoretical concepts of differential and algebraic geometry.

In the quantum chemistry version of the method (QC-TTNS), the wave function with variable tensor order is formulated as products of tensors in a multiparticle basis spanning a truncated Hilbert space of the original CAS-CI problem. The treestructure is advantageous since the distance between two arbitrary orbitals in the tree scales only logarithmically with the number of orbitals, whereas the scaling is linear in the MPS array. Therefore, the TTNS ansatz is better suited for multireference problems with numerous highly correlated orbitals.

The underlying benefits of QC-TTNS are, however, far from fully exploited and the optimization of the method is far more
complicated. Due to the more advanced topology, several optimization tasks and problems arise which do not have counterparts in the MPS formulation. Therefore, there is a tedious work still ahead of us.

## Acknowledgment

The authors are also grateful for Libor Veis, Jenő Sólyom, Péter Nagy, and Tibor Szilvási for helpful discussions and comments.

Keywords: tensor networks • DMRG • entanglement • tensor product approximation • quantum infromation

How to cite this article: Sz. Szalay, M. Pfeffer, V. Murg, G. Barcza, F. Verstraete, R. Schneider, Ö. Legeza. Int. J. Quantum Chem. 2015, 115, 1342-1391. DOI: 10.1002/qua. 24898

## References

[1] P. G. Ciarlet, J. L. Lions, In Computational Chemistry: Reviews of Current Trends, North-Holland, 2003.
[2] A. Szabo, N.S. Ostlund, Modern Quantum Chemistry, McGraw Hill, New York, 1982.
[3] T. Helgaker, P. Jorgensen, J. Olsen, Molecular Electronic-Structure Theory, John Wiley, New York, 2000.
[4] T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, ESAIM: Math. Modell. Numer. Anal. 2013, 47, 1553.
[5] C. J. Cramer, M. Woch, P. Piecuch, C. Puzzarini, L. Gagliardi, J. Phys. Chem. A, 2006, 110, 1991.
[6] M. Reiher, Faraday Discuss., 2007, 135, 97.
[7] K. H. Marti, I. M. Ondík, G. Moritz, M. Reiher, Density matrix renormalization group calculations on relative energies of transition metal complexes and clusters, J. Chem. Phys., 2008, 128, 014104.
[8] M. Reiher, CHIMIA Int. J. Chem., 2009, 63, 140.
[9] Y. Kurashige, T, Yanai, J. Chem. Phys., 2009, 130, 234114.
[10] M. Podewitz, M. T. Stiebritz, M. Reiher, Faraday Discuss., 2011, 148, 119.
[11] G. Barcza, Ö. Legeza, K. H. Marti, M. Reiher, Phys. Rev. A, 2011, 83, 012508.
[12] K. Boguslawski, K. H. Marti, Ö. Legeza, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Theory Comput., 2012, 8, 1970.
[13] K. Boguslawski, P. Tecmer, Ö. Legeza, M. Reiher, J. Phys. Chem. Lett., 2012, 3, 3129.
[14] S. Sharma, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2012, 136, 124121.
[15] N. Nakatani, S. Wouters, D. V. Neck, G. Kin-Lic Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2014, 140, 024108.
[16] T. V. Harris, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, K. Morokuma, J. Chem. Phys., 2014, 140, 054303.
[17] S. Wouters, T. Bogaerts, P. V. D. Voort, V. V. Speybroeck, D. V. Neck, J. Chem. Phys., 2014, 140, 241103.
[18] S. Östlund. S. Rommer, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1995, 75, 3537.
[19] F. Verstraete, D. Porras, J. I. Cirac, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2004, 93, 227205.
[20] U. Schollwöck, Rev. Mod. Phys., 2005, 77, 259-315.
[21] U. Schollwöck, Ann. Phys., 2011, 326, 96.
[22] I. Peschel, M. Kaulke, O. Legeza, Ann. Phys., 1999, 8, 153.
[23] G. Vidal, J. I. Latorre, E. Rico, A. Kitaev, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2003, 90, 227902.
[24] Ö. Legeza, J. Röder, B. A. Hess, Phys. Rev. B, 2003, 67, 125114.
[25] Ö. Legeza, J. Sólyom, Phys. Rev. B, 2003, 68, 195116.
[26] M. B. Plenio, J. Eisert, J. Dreißig, M. Cramer, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2005, 94, 060503.
[27] J. Eisert, M. Cramer, M. B. Plenio, Rev. Mod. Phys., 2010, 82, 277.
[28] M. B. Hastings, J. Stat. Mech. Theory Exp., 2007, 2007, P08024.
[29] L. Amico, R. Fazio, A. Osterloh, V. Vedral, Rev. Mod. Phys., 2008, 80, 517.
[30] K. V. Acoleyen, M. Mariën, F. Verstraete, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2013, 111, 170501.
[31] F. Verstraete, J. I. Cirac, arXiv [cond-mat.str-el], 2004, 0407066.
[32] V. Murg, F. Verstraete, J. I. Cirac, Phys. Rev. A, 2007, 75, 033605.
[33] V. Murg, F. Verstraete, J. I. Cirac, Phys. Rev. B, 2009, 79, 195119.
[34] F. Verstraete, V. Murg, J. I. Cirac, Adv. Phys., 2008, 57, 143-224.
[35] G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2008, 101, 110501.
[36] H. J. Changlani, J. M. Kinder, C. J. Umrigar, G. Kin-Lic Chan, Phys. Rev. B 2009, 80, 245116.
[37] K. H Marti, B. Bauer, M. Reiher, M. Troyer, F. Verstraete, New J. Phys., 2010, 12, 103008.
[38] K. H. Marti, M. Reiher, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2011, 13, 6750.
[39] G. Evenbly, G. Vidal, J. Stat. Phys., 2011, 145, 891.
[40] Y.-Y. Shi, L.-M. Duan, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. A, 2006, 74, 022320.
[41] A. J. Ferris, Phys. Rev. B, 2013, 87, 125139.
[42] Ö. Legeza, T. Röhwedder, and R. Schneider, In B. Engquist, T. Chan, W. J. Cook, E. Hairer, J. Hastad, A. Iserles, H. P. Langtangen, C. Le Bris, P. L. Lions, C. Lubich, A. J. Majda, J. McLaughlin, R. M. Nieminen, J. ODEN, P. Souganidis, A. Tveito, Eds., Encyclopedia of Applied and Computational Mathematics, Springer, 2013.
[43] Ö. Legeza, T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, Sz. Szalay, In V. Bach, L. Delle Site, Eds., Many-Electron Approaches in Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics, Mathematical Physics Studies, Springer International Publishing, 53-76, 2014.
[44] R. Orús, A practical introduction to tensor networks: Matrix product states and projected entangled pair states, Ann. Phys., 2014, 349, 117.
[45] W. Hackbusch, Tensor Spaces and Numerical Tensor Calculus, vol. 42 of Springer Series in Computational Mathematics, Springer, Heidelberg, 2012.
[46] W. Hackbusch, Acta Numer., 2014, 23, 651.
[47] W. Hackbusch, R. Schneider, In Extraction of Quantifiable Information from Complex Systems, Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering, Springer, 2014.
[48] S. R. White, R. L. Martin, J. Chem. Phys., 1999, 110, 4127.
[49] G. Kin-Lic Chan, M. Head-Gordon, J. Chem. Phys., 2002, 116, 4462.
[50] G. Kin-Lic Chan, M. Head-Gordon, J. Chem. Phys., 2003, 118, 8551.
[51] Ö. Legeza, J. Röder, B. A. Hess, Molec. Phys., 2003, 101, 2019.
[52] A. O. Mitrushenkov, R. Linguerri, P. Palmieri, G. Fano, J. Chem. Phys., 2003, 119, 4148.
[53] G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2004, 120, 3172.
[54] G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2004, 121, 6110.
[55] Ö. Legeza, J. Sólyom, Phys. Rev. B, 2004, 70, 205118.
[56] G. Moritz, B. A. Hess, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2005, 122, 024107.
[57] G. K.-L. Chan, T. V. Voorhis, J. Chem. Phys., 2005,122, 204101.
[58] G. Moritz, A. Wolf, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2005, 123, 184105.
[59] G. Moritz, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2006, 124, 034103.
[60] J. Hachmann, W. Cardoen, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2006, 125, 144101.
[61] J. Rissler, R. M. Noack, S. R. White, Chem. Phys., 2006, 323, 519.
[62] G. Moritz, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2007, 126, 244109.
[63] J. J. Dorando, J. Hachmann, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2007, 127, 084109.
[64] J. Hachmann, J. J. Dorando, M. Avilés, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2007, 127, 134309.
[65] D. Zgid, M. Nooijen, J. Chem. Phys., 2008, 128, 014107.
[66] D. Zgid, M. Nooijen, J. Chem. Phys., 2008, 128, 144115.
[67] D. Zgid, M. Nooijen, J. Chem. Phys., 2008, 128, 144116.
[68] D. Ghosh, J. Hachmann, T. Yanai, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2008, 128, 144117.
[69] G. K.-L. Chan, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2008, 10, 3454.
[70] T. Yanai, Y. Kurashige, D. Ghosh, G. K.-L. Chan, Int. J. Quantum Chem., 2009, 109, 2178.
[71] J. J. Dorando, J. Hachmann, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2009, 130, 184111.
[72] T. Yanai, Y. Kurashige, E. Neuscamman, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2010, 132, 024105.
[73] E. Neuscamman, T. Yanai, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2010, 132, 024106.
[74] K. H. Marti, M. Reiher, Molec. Phys., 2010, 108, 501.
[75] H.-G. Luo, M.-P. Qin, T. Xiang, Phys. Rev. B, 2010, 235129.
[76] W. Mizukami, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, J. Chem. Phys., 2010, 133, 091101.
[77] K. Boguslawski, K. H. Marti, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2011, 134, 224101.
[78] Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, J. Chem. Phys., 2011, 135, 094104.
[79] A. O. Mitrushchenkov, G. Fano, R. Linguerri, P. Palmieri, Int. J. Quantum Chem., 2012, 112, 1606.
[80] S. Wouters, P. A. Limacher, D. V. Neck, P. W. Ayers, J. Chem. Phys., 2012, 36, 134110.
[81] T. Yanai, Y. Kurashige, E. Neuscamman, G. K.-L. Chan, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2012, 14, 7809.
[82] W. Mizukami, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, J. Chem. Theory Comput., 2013, 9, 401.
[83] K. Boguslawski, P. Tecmer, G. Barcza, Ö. Legeza, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Theory Comput., 2013, 9, 2959.
[84] Y. Kurashige, G. K.-L. Chan, T. Yanai, Nat. Chem., 2013, 5, 660.
[85] Y. Ma, H. Ma, J. Chem. Phys., 2013, 138, 224105
[86] M. Saitow, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, J. Chem. Phys., 2013, 139, 044118.
[87] F. Liu, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, K. Morokuma, J. Chem. Theory Comput., 2013, 9, 4462.
[88] P. Tecmer, K. Boguslawski, O. Legeza, M. Reiher, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2014, 16, 719.
[89] S. Knecht, Ö. Legeza, M. Reiher, J. Chem. Phys., 2014, 140, 041101.
[90] S. Wouters, W. Poelmans, P. W. Ayers, D. V. Neck, Comput. Phys. Commun., 2014, 185, 1501.
[91] M. Mottet, P. Tecmer, K. Boguslawski, O. Legeza, M. Reiher, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2014, 16, 8872.
[92] T. N. Lan, Y. Kurashige, T. Yanai, J. Chem. Theory Comput., 2014, 10, 1953.
[93] S. Sharma, T. Yanai, G. H. Booth, C. J. Umrigar, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2014, 140, 104112.
[94] Y. Kurashige, M. Saitow, J. Chalupsky, T. Yanai, Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys., 2014, 16, 11988.
[95] E. Fertitta, B. Paulus, G. Barcza, Ö. Legeza, Phys. Rev. B, 2014, 90, 245129.
[96] S. F. Keller, M. Reiher, CHIMIA Int. J. Chem., 2014, 68, 200.
[97] C. Duperrouzel, P. Tecmer, K. Boguslawski, G. Barcza, Ö. Legeza, P. W. Ayers, Chem. Phys. Lett., 2015, 621, 160. Available at http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0009261415000159.
[98] V. Murg, F. Verstraete, Ö. Legeza, R. M. Noack, Phys. Rev. B, 2010, 82, 205105.
[99] N. Nakatani, G. K.-L. Chan, J. Chem. Phys., 2013, 138, 134113.
[100] V. Murg, F Verstraete, R Schneider, P. R. Nagy, Ö Legeza, arXiv [physic-s.chem-ph] JCTC, 2015, 11, 1027. Available at http://pubs.acs.org/doi/ abs/10.1021/ct501187j.
[101] Ö. Legeza, R. M. Noack, J. Sólyom, L. Tincani, In H. Fehske, R. Schneider, A. Weie, Eds., Computational Many-Particle Physics, volume 739 of Lecture Notes in Physics, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2008, pp. 653-664.
[102] G. K.-L. Chan, J. J. Dorando, D. Ghosh, J. Hachmann, E. Neuscamman, H. Wang, T. Yanai, In Stephen Wilson, Peter J. Grout, Jean Maruani, Gerardo Delgado-Barrio, Piotr Piecuch, Eds., Frontiers in Quantum Systems in Chemistry and Physics, vol. 8 of Progress in Theoretical Chemistry and Physics, Springer, 2008.
[103] G. K.-L. Chan, D. Zgid, In Annual Reports in Computational Chemistry, Elsevier, 2009, pp 149-162.
[104] K. H. Marti, M. Reiher, Z. Phys. Chem., 2010, 224, 583.
[105] G. K.-L. Chan, S. Sharma, Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem., 2011, 62, 465.
[106] G. K.-L. Chan, Comput. Molec. Sci., 2012, 2, 907-920.
[107] Y. Kurashige, Molec. Phys., 2014, 112, 1485.
[108] S. Wouters, arXiv [cond-mat.str-el], 2014, 1405.1225, PhD thesis, Ghent University.
[109] S. Wouters, D. V. Neck, Eur. Phys. J. D, 2014, 68.
[110] International Workshop on Recent Progress and Prospects in DensityMatrix Renormalization, Lorentz Center, Leiden University, The Netherlands, 2004, 2-13 Aug.
[111] Workshop on Tensor Network Methods for Quantum Chemistry, CECAM-ETHZ, Zurich, Switzerland, 2010, 29-31 Mar.
[112] International Workshop on Density Matrix Renormalization Group and Other Advances in Numerical Renormalization Group Methods, Beijing, China, 23 Aug-3 Sept 2010.
[113] Workshop on Entanglement Based Approaches in Quantum Chemistry (ebaqc), MPIPKS-Dresden, Germany, 2012, 3-6 Sept.
[114] Workshop on Tensor Network Algorithms in Computational Physics and Numerical Analysis, CECAM-ETHZ, Zurich, Switzerland, 2013, 1517 May.

115] Workshop on Theoretical Chemistry: New Wavefunction Methods and Entanglement Optimizations in Quantum Chemistry, Mariapfarr, Austria, 2014, 18-21 Feb.
[116] C. Lubich, From Quantum to Classical Molecular Dynamics: Reduced Models and Numerical Analysis, volume 12 of Zurich Lectures in Advanced Mathematics, European Mathematical Society, 2008.
[117] W. Hackbusch, S. Kühn, J. Fourier Anal. Appl., 2009, 15, 706.
[118] S. R. White, R. M. Noack,Phys. Rev. Lett., 1992, 68, 3487.
[119] S. R. White, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1992, 69, 2863.
[120] S. R. White, Phys. Rev. B, 1993, 48, 10345.
[121] I. Peschel, X. Wang, M. Kaulke, K. Hallberg, Eds. Density-Matrix Renormalization: A New Numerical Method in Physics, volume 528 of Lecture Notes in Physics, Springer, 1999.
[122] J. Dukelsky, S. Pittel, Rep. Prog. Phys., 2004, 67, 513.
[123] [123] K. Hallberg, In D. Sénéchal, A.-M Tremblay, C. Bourbonnais, Eds., Theoretical Methods for Strongly Correlated Electrons, CRM Series in Mathematical Physics, Springer, New York, 2004, pp. 3-37.
[124] R. M. Noack, S. R. Manmana, AIP Conf. Proc., 2005, 789, 93.
[125] K. A. Hallberg, Adv. Phys., 2006, 55, 477.
[126] A. O. Mitrushenkov, G. Fano, F. Ortolani, R. Linguerri, P. Palmieri, J. Chem. Phys. 2001, 115, 6815.
[127] S. Wouters, Available at: https://github.com/SebWouters/CheMPS2, 2014.
[128] S. R. White, J. Chem. Phys., 2002, 117, 7472.
[129] B. Pirvu, J. Haegeman, F. Verstraete, Phys. Rev. B, 2012, 85, 035130.
[130] J. Haegeman, B. Pirvu, D. J. Weir, J. I. Cirac, T. J. Osborne, H. Verschelde, F. Verstraete, Phys. Rev. B, 2012, 85, 100408.
[131] S. Wouters, N. Nakatani, D. V. Neck, G. K.-L. Chan, Phys. Rev. B, 2013, 88, 2013.
[132] J. Haegeman, T. J. Osborne, F. Verstraete, Phys. Rev. B, 2013, 88, 075133.
[133] Ö. Legeza, J. Sólyom, Phys. Rev. B, 1997, 56, 14449.
[134] G. Sierra, T. Nishino, Nucl. Phys. B, 1997, 495, 505.
[135] I. P. McCulloch, M. Gulácsi, Aust. J. Phys., 2000, 53, 597.
[136] I. P. McCulloch, M. Gulácsi, Philos. Mag. Lett., 2001, 81, 447.
[137] I. P. McCulloch, M. Gulácsi, Europhys. Lett., 2002, 57, 852.
[138] I. P McCulloch, J. Stat. Mech. Theory Exp., 2007, 2007, P10014.
[139] S. Pittel, N. Sandulescu, Phys. Rev. C, 2006, 73, 014301.
[140] J. Rotureau, N. Michel, W. Nazarewicz, M. Płoszajczak, J. Dukelsky, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2006, 97, 110603.
[141] A. I. Tóth, C. P. Moca, O. Legeza, G. Zaránd, Phys. Rev. B, 2008, 78, 245109.
[142] Ö. Legeza, C. P. Moca, A. I. Toth, I. Weymann, G. Zarand, arXiv [cond-mat.str-el], 2008, 0809.3143.
[143] B. Thakur, S. Pittel, N. Sandulescu, Phys. Rev. C, 2008, 78, 041303.
[144] S. Singh, H.-Q. Zhou, G. Vidal, New J. Phys., 2010, 12, 033029.
[145] S. Singh, R. N. C. Pfeifer, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. A, 2010, 82, 050301.
[146] S. Singh, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. B, 2012, 86, 195114.
[147] A. Weichselbaum, Ann. Phys., 2012, 327, 2972.
[148] U. Benedikt, A. Auer, M. Espig, W. Hackbusch, J. Chem. Phys., 2011, 134, 054118.
[149] S. Holtz, T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, SIAM J. Sci. Comput., 2012, 34, A683.
[150] Ö. Legeza, F. Gebhard, J. Rissler, Phys. Rev. B, 2006, 74, 195112.
[151] I. Affleck, T. Kennedy, E. H. Lieb, H. Tasaki, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1987, 59, 799.
[152] G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2003, 91, 147902.
[153] I. V. Oseledets, E. E. Tyrtyshnikov, SIAM J. Sci. Comput., 2009, 31, 3744.
[154] J. Preskill, Available at: http://www.theory.caltech.edu/people/preskill/ ph229.
[155] R. Horodecki, P. Horodecki, M. Horodecki, K. Horodecki, Rev. Mod. Phys., 2009, 81, 865.
[156] Sz. Szalay, arXiv [quant-ph], 2013, 1302.4654.
[157] A. Einstein, B. Podolsky, N. Rosen, Phys. Rev., 1935, 47, 777.
[158] J. S. Bell, Physics, 1967, 1, 195.
[159] J. F. Clauser, M. A. Horne, A. Shimony, R. A. Holt, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1969, 23, 880.
[160] E. Schrödinger, Naturwissenschaften, 1935, 23, 807.
[161] E. Schrödinger, Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc., 1935, 31, 555.
[162] M. A. Nielsen, I. L. Chuang, Quantum Computation and Quantum Information, 1st ed., Cambridge University Press, 2000.
[163] M. M. Wilde, Quantum Information Theory, Cambridge University Press, 2013, Cambridge Books Online.
[164] P. Ziesche, Int. J. Quantum Chem., 1995, 56, 363.
[165] Á. Nagy, R. G. Parr, Int. J. Quantum Chem., 1996, 58, 323.
[166] R. F. Nalewajski, J. Phys. Chem. A, 2000, 104, 11940.
[167] T. Juhász, D. A. Mazziotti, J. Chem. Phys., 2006, 125, 174105.
[168] A. V. Luzanov, O.V. Prezhdo, Molec. Phys. 2007, 105, 2879.
[169] D. R. Alcoba, R. C. Bochicchio, L. Lain, A. Torre, J. Chem. Phys., 2010, 133, 144104.
[170] G. Barcza, R. M. Noack, J. Sólyom, Ö. Legeza, arXiv [cond-mat.str-el], 2014, 1406.6643.
[171] K. Boguslawski, P. Tecmer, arXiv [physics.chem-ph]], 2014, 1409.8017.
[172] Ö. Legeza, J. Sólyom, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2006, 96, 116401.
[173] C. J. Hillar, L.-H. Lim, J. ACM, 2013, 60, 1.
[174] L. Grasedyck, D. Kressner, C. Tobler, GAMM-Mitteilungen, 2013, 36, 53.
[175] T. Rohwedder, A. Uschmajew, SIAM J. Numer. Anal., 2013, 51, 1134.
[176] S. V. Dolgov, B. N. Khoromskij, I. V. Oseledets, SIAM J. Sci. Comput., 2012, 34, 2012.
[177] C. Lubich, T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, B. Vandereycken, SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl., 2013, 34, 470.
[178] A. Uschmajew, B. Vandereycken, Linear Algebra Appl., 2013, 439, 133.
[179] J. Haegeman, J. I. Cirac, T. J. Osborne, I. Pižorn, H. Verschelde, F. Verstraete, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2011, 107, 070601.
[180] J. Haegeman, M. Mariën, T. J. Osborne, F. Verstraete, J. Math. Phys., 2014, 55, 50.
[181] I. Oseledets, SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl., 2010, 31, 2130.
[182] I. Oseledets, SIAM J. Sci. Comput., 2011, 33, 2295.
[183] D. V. Savostyanov, S. V. Dolgov, J. M. Werner, I. Kuprov, Phys. Rev. B, 2014, 90, 085139.
[184] S. Holtz, T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, Numer. Math., 2012, 120, 701.
[185] C. Lubich, I. Oseledets, B. Vandereycken, arXiv preprint arXiv, 2014, 1407.2042.
[186] L. Grasedyck, SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl., 2010, 31, 2029.
[187] S. R. White, Phys. Rev. B, 2005, 72, 180403.
[188] G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2007, 99, 220405.
[189] M. Reed, B. Simon, Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. IV, Analysis of Operators, Academic Press, London, 1978.
[190] H. Yserentant, Numer. Math., 2004, 98, 731.
[191] H. Yserentant, Regularity and Approximability of Electronic Wave Functions, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Springer, Berlin, 2010.
[192] T. G. Kolda, B. W. Bader, SIAM Rev., 2009, 51, 455.
[193] J.M. Landsberg, Tensors: Geometry and Applications, Graduate Studies in Mathematics, American Mathematical Society, 2012.
[194] J. M. Landsberg, Y. Qi, K. Ye, Quantum Info. Comput. 2012, 12, 346.
[195] M. Espig, W. Hackbusch, S. Handschuh, R. Schneider, Comput. Vis. Sci. 2011, 14, 271.
[196] M. Espig, W. Hackbusch, T. Rohwedder, R. Schneider, Numer. Math. 2012.
[197] L. D. Lathauwer, B. D. Moor, J. Vandewalle, SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl. 2000, 21, 1253.
[198] E. Schmidt, Math. Ann. 1907, 63, 433.
[199] D. Perez-Garcia, F. Verstraete, M. M. Wolf, J. I. Cirac, Quantum Info. Comput. 2007, 7, 401.
[200] L. Grasedyck, W. Hackbusch, Comput. Methods Appl. Math. 2011, 11, 291.
[201] A. Falcó, W. Hackbusch, A. Nouy, Geometric Structures in Tensor Representations (release 2), Preprint, Max Planck Institute for Mathematics in the Sciences, 2014.
[202] H. Wang, M, Thoss, J. Chem. Phys. 2003, 119, 1289.
[203] P.-A. Absil, R. Mahony, R. Sepulchre, Optimization Algorithms on Matrix Manifolds, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 2008.
[204] J.M. Lee, Introduction to Smooth Manifolds, Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, 2003.
[205] J. Haegeman, Variational Renormalization Group Methods for Extended Quantum Systems, PhD thesis, Ghent University, 2011.
[206] A. Arnold, T. Jahnke, BIT Numer. Math., 2014, 54, 305.
[207] R. Schneider, A. Uschmajew, J. Complex., 2014, 56.
[208] H. D. Meyer, U. Manthe, L. S. Cederbaum, CRchem. Phys. Lett., 1990, 165, 73.
[209] M. H. Beck, A. Jäckle, G. A. Worth, H. D. Meyer, Phys. Rep., 1999, 324, 1.
[210] E. Hairer, C. Lubich, G. Wanner, Acta Numer. 2003, 12, 399.
[211] D. Conte, C. Lubich, ESAIM: Math. Modell. Numer. Anal. 2010, 44, 759.
[212] C. D. Silva, F. J. Hermann, arXiv [math.NA], 2014, 1405.2096.
[213] C. Lubich, I. V. Oseledets, arXiv [math.NA] BIT Num Math, 2013, 54, 171. Available at http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007\%2Fs10543-013-0454-0.
[214] A. Uschmajew, B. Vandereycken, 2014, NOLTA2014.
[215] Z. Li, A. Uschmajew, S. Zhang, 2014.
[216] C. W. Bauschlicher, S. R. Langhoff, J. Chem. Phys., 1988, 89, 4246.
[217] M. S. Gordon, M. W. Schmidt, In C. E. Dykstra, G. Frenking, K. S. Kim, G. E. Scuseria, Ed., Theory and Applications of Computational Chemistry, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 2005, pp 1167-1189.
[218] C. Lanczos, J. Res. Natl. Bur. Stand. 1920, 45, 255.
[219] E. R. Davidson, J. Comput. Phys. 1975, 17, 87.
[220] J. F. Cornwell, Group Theory in Physics, An Introduction. Academic Press, 1997.
[221] H. Weyl, Z. Phys., 1927, 46, 1.
[222] E. P. Wigner, Ann. Math. 1939, 40, 149.
[223] E. P. Wigner, Gruppentheorie und ihre Anwendung auf die Quantenmechanik der Atomspektren, Springer, 1931.
[224] E. P. Wigner, Group Theory and Its Application to the Quantum Mechanics of Atomic Spectra, Academic Press, 1959.
[225] G. Vidal, J. Modern Opt., 2000, 47, 355.
[226] M. Horodecki, Quant. Inf. Comp., 2001, $1,3$.
[227] M. Ohya, D. Petz, Quantum Entropy and Its Use, 1st ed., Springer, 1993.
[228] D. Petz, Quantum Information Theory and Quantum Statistics, Springer, 2008.
[229] R. Horodecki, P. Horodecki, M. Horodecki, Phys. Lett. A, 1996, 210, 377.
[230] S. Furuichi, In Aspects of Optical Sciences and Quantum Information, Research Signpost, 2007, pp 1-86.
[231] C. H. Bennett, S. Popescu, D. Rohrlich, J. A. Smolin, A. V. Thapliyal, Phys. Rev. A, 2000, 63, 012307.
[232] E. Chitambar, D. Leung, L. Maninska, M. Ozols, A. Winter, Commun. Math. Phys., 2014, 328, 303.
[233] P. Calabrese, J. Cardy, J. Stat. Mech. Theory Exp., 2004, 2004, P06002.
[234] N. Laflorencie, E. S. Sørensen, M.-S. Chang, I. Affleck, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2006, 96, 100603.
[235] Ö. Legeza, J. Sólyom, L. Tincani, R. M. Noack, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2007, 99, 087203.
[236] L. P. Kadanoff, Physics, 1966, 2, 263.
[237] S. D. Drell, M. Weinstein, S. Yankielowicz, Phys. Rev. D, 1977, 16, 1769.
[238] R. Jullien, P. Pfeuty, J. N. Fields, S. Doniach, Phys. Rev. B, 1978, 18, 3568.
[239] K. G. Wilson, Rev. Mod. Phys., 1975, 47, 773.
[240] W. Hofstetter, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2000, 85, 1508.
[241] F. B. Anders, A. Schiller, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2005, 95, 196801.
[242] R. Peters, T. Pruschke, F. B. Anders, Phys. Rev. B, 2006, 74, 245114.
[243] A. Weichselbaum, J. von Delft, Phys. Rev. Lett., 2007, 99, 076402.
[244] T. Xiang, Phys. Rev. B, 1996, 53, R10445.
[245] P. Corboz, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. B, 2009, 80, 165129.
[246] L. Tagliacozzo, G. Evenbly, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. B, 2009, 80, 235127.
[247] P. Corboz, G. Evenbly, F. Verstraete, G. Vidal, Phys. Rev. A, 2010, 81, 010303.
[248] B. Pirvu, V. Murg, J. I. Cirac, F. Verstraete, New J. Phys., 2010, 12, 025012.
[249] Ö. Legeza, G. Fáth, Phys. Rev. B, 1996, 53, 14349.
[250] G. Barcza, Ö. Legeza, R. M. Noack, J. Sólyom, Phys. Rev. B, 2012, 86, 075133.
[251] J. Atkins, E. Boman, B. Hendrickson, SIAM J. Comput., 1998, 28, 297.
[252] M. Fiedler, Czech. Math. J., 1973, 23, 298.
[253] M. Fiedler, Czech. Math. J., 1975, 25, 619.
[254] O. Berkman, U. Vishkin, SIAM J. Comput., 1993, 22, 221.
[255] S. F. Boys, Rev. Mod. Phys., 1960, 32, 296.
[256] O. Legeza, J. Sólyom, In International Workshop on Recent Progress and Prospects in Density-Matrix Renormalization, Lorentz Center, Leiden University, The Netherlands, 2004.
[257] F. Jensen, Introduction to Computational Chemistry, Wiley, New York, 1999.
[258] Ö. Legeza, C. P. Moca, A. Tóth, I. Weymann, Z. Gergely, Available at: http://www.phy.bme.hu/~dmnrg/, 2008.
[259] S. Sharma, G. K.-L. Chan, Block code for dmrg, Available at: http:// www.princeton.edu/chemistry/chan/software/dmrg/, 2012.
[260] D. Bloor, R. R. Chance, Eds., Polydiacetylenes: Synthesis, Structure and Electronic Properties, volume 102 of Nato Science Series E, Nijhoff, Dordrecht, 1985.
[261] H.-J. Cantow, Ed., Polydiacetylenes, vol. 63 of Advances in Polymer Science, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1984.
[262] N. S. Sariciftci, Ed., Primary Photoexcitations in Conjugated Polymers: Molecular Exciton Versus Semiconductor Band Model, World Scientific, 1998.
[263] M. Schott, In G. Lanzani, Ed., Photophysics of Molecular Materials: From Single Molecules to Single Crystals, Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH \& Co. KGaA, 2006, pp 49-151.
[264] S. Spagnoli, J. Berrhar, C. LapersonneMeyer, M. Schott, J. Chem. Phys., 1994, 100, 6195.
[265] F. Dubin, R. Melet, T. Barisien, R. Grousson, L. Legrand, M. Schott, and V. Voliotis, Nat. Phys., 2006, 2, 32.
[266] M. Rohlfing, S. G. Louie, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1999, 82, 1959.
[267] J.-W. van der Horst, P. A. Bobbert, M. A. J. Michels, G. Brocks, P. J. Kelly, Phys. Rev. Lett., 1999, 83, 4413.
[268] A. Race, W. Barford, R. J. Bursill, Phys. Rev. B 2003, 67, 245202.
[269] G. Barcza, W. Barford, F. Gebhard, and Ö. Legeza, Phys. Rev. B 2013, 87, 245116.
[270] G. Hager, E. Jeckelmann, H. Fehske, G. Wellein, J. Comput. Phys. 2004, 194, 795.
[271] G. Alvarez, Comput. Phys. Commun. 2012, 183, 2226.
[272] S. Yamada, T. Imamura, M. Machida, In Proceedings of 2011 International Conference for High Performance Computing, Networking, Storage and Analysis, SC '11, ACM, New York, NY, USA, 2011, pp. 62:1-62:10.
[273] J. Rincón, D. J. García, K. Hallberg, Comput. Phys. Commun., 2010, 181, 1346.
[274] E. M. Stoudenmire, S. R. White, Phys. Rev. B, 2013, 87, 155137.
[275] J.F. Yu, H.-C. Hsiao, Y.-.J. Kao, In 22nd International Conference on Parallel Computational Fluid Dynamics (ParCFD 2010) ParCFD, vol. 45, 2011, p. 55.
[276] M. J. Cawkwell, E. J. Sanville, S. M. Mniszewski, A. M. N. Niklasson, J. Chem. Theory Comput. 2012, 8, 4094.
[277] C. Nemes, G. Barcza, Z. Nagy, O. Legeza, P. Szolgay, Comput. Phys. Commun., 2014, 185, 1570.

Received: 21 November 2014
Revised: 30 January 2015
Accepted: 3 February 2015
Published online 25 May 2015


[^0]:    [a] Sz. Szalay, G. Barcza, O. Legeza
    Strongly Correlated Systems "Lendület" Research Group, Wigner Research Centre for Physics, Konkoly-Thege Miklós út 29-33, 1121 Budapest, Hungary E-mail: legeza.ors@wigner.mta.hu
    [b] M. Pfeffer, R. Schneider
    Fakultät II-Mathematik und Naturwissenschaften, Institut für Mathematik, Technische Universität Berlin, Strasse des 17. Juni 136, Berlin, Germany
    [c] V. Murg, F. Verstraete
    Fakultät für Physik, Universität Wien, Boltzmanngasse 3, A-1090 Vienna, Austria
    Contract grant sponsor: European Research Area Chemistry (ERA-Chemistry) in part by the Hungarian Research Fund (OTKA); contract grant numbers: NN110360, K100908.
    Contract grant sponsor: DFG SCHN 530/9-1 project; contract grant number: 10041620.

    Contract grant sponsor: FWF-E1243-N19.
    Contract grant sponsor: SFB-ViCoM project (V.M. and F.V.).
    Contract grant sponsor: Alexander von Humboldt foundation and ETH Zürich (Ö.L.).
    © 2015 Wiley Periodicals, Inc.

